

How to Study the Word of God

Author: Dr. Gerard Cotter

Editor: Larren Joy D. Tumpag
larrenjoytumpag@gmail.com

Copyright: ljc1611kfv.com

This book is an introductory book on how to study the word of God. There are whole books written on subjects which only receive a small paragraph in this book. Therefore, it does not provide in-depth proof of the things written here. That type of evidence is found on my web site (ljc1611kjb.com). This book is written to give a broad over-view and to help most people understand God's way to understand the word of God. If a reader decides that they need more details, this book is full of references to where the reader can find those details.

Isaiah 55:8 says: "For my thoughts *are* not your thoughts, neither *are* your ways my ways, saith the LORD."

I have studied everything that I found on this subject, and talked to all teachers that I have met who teach this subject, for more than fifteen (15) years. I have also studied it, off and on, for many years prior to that. Every source that I have found insisted that their way was better than some other way of man. However, I have not found anyone else who has published God's way to study the word of God. I have heard of others who use God's way, but have not met them. Nor have I heard of anyone else who has published evidence that using God's way to study the word of God, eliminates all claims of conflicts and doctrinal error in the word of God. The evidence of that truth is published at ljc1611kjb.com.

All claims of conflicts and doctrinal error in the word of God are the result of men using a way of man to study the word of God and their refusal to use God's way. This book shows God's way to study the word of God, at a high level. Lord willing, I will later publish the more detailed explanation of God's way.

Table of Contents

How to Study the Word of God.....	1
Why You Should Read This Book.....	5
How to Study in General	13
1. Attitude:.....	13
2. Practical:	14
3. Procedure:	15
4. Plan:.....	17
5. Tools:	18
Reliability of your Bible.....	19
1. God wrote His “word of God” to reveal Himself.....	19
2. English KJV1611	21
3. Other Languages	24
4. So-called “original languages”	25
5. “Textus Receptus”	26
Precepts - Basic Doctrines of the Bible.....	28
1. God is a Spirit	28
2. In God’s Image	29
3. The Truth About the Physical Reality	31
4. Hypocrisy and False Doctrines.....	35
5. In the Beginning.....	36
6. Death and Salvation	41
7. Authorities:.....	43
8. God’s way versus Man’s way:	46
9. Attitude:.....	46
10. Bible Word Definitions	50
11. Belief, Faith and Hope:	52
12. Prayer:	54
Types of Applications in the Bible	55
1. Basic Procedure:	55
2. Testaments: Old and New	58
3. Parables.....	63
4. Miracles.....	67
5. The Gospels	71
6. Promises of God.....	76
7. Prophecies	79
8. Titles of God	81

9. Jesus and Devils..... 105

10. The Ten Commandments and the “Greatest Commandment” 106

11. Covenants..... 109

Addendum:..... 113

 Thank God by Maturing..... 113

 Pounds and Talents 118

 Prophecies for Today 122

Questions and Answers 127

Questions Only..... 134

Why You Should Read This Book

Sometimes, the most important question to ask is: "What questions should I ask?"

Knowing what information to seek and how to seek it can actually be more helpful than receiving a direct answer to some questions -- direct answers can mislead and deceive. However, knowing how to verify the answers received can be more critical than actually finding truth. This is especially true when you have conflicting opinions such as differing religious opinions. Add to the fact that accepting the wrong answer can result in personally spending eternity in a "lake of fire", and it becomes critically important that we know how to separate truth from error.

Hopefully, this book conveys enough information so that the reader will know if they want, or need, to ask further questions about how to study the word of God and so that the reader has an idea of what specific questions they need to ask in order to avoid being deceived.

The world is full of liars and religious liars are the worst ones. A normal liar will hurt you in this world but a religious liar can cause you to end up in the "lake of fire" forever. Since we will all die and be personally judged by God, it is important to know how God will judge each of us personally.

The fact is that there are a lot of different religions which claim to tell us about God; including philosophies which claim that there is no God and no existence after death. That foolishness is the subject of a different book. In addition to other religions and philosophies, there are so-called holy books which claim to speak for the God of the Bible while disagreeing with the KJV-1611. Those so-called holy books do not have any true evidence that they were written by the most powerful being that exists. However, the KJV-1611 Bible does. It provides many hundreds of fulfilled prophecies which are exact and detailed. No other source in the world provides that kind of evidence. Only the most powerful being in existence can, repeatedly, say what He will do and then do exactly what He said in spite of His many enemies trying to prevent His doing so. And, since we will each be personally judged by the most powerful being that exists, and be rewarded or punished, it is critical to know the basis of the judgment that we will each personally face.

This book is written to those people who accept that the most powerful being in existence is the true God. And that He used "holy men" to write and to preserve His word and that the preserved word of God is the KJV-1611. This book is written to the people who have that truth settled in their mind and in their heart. This book is written to give such people the tools which will enable them to verify all doctrines which are claimed to come from the "word of God". Each person needs to separate true Biblical doctrine from religious traditions and this book provides the tools needed to do exactly that.

Even among the people who claim to believe the KJV-1611, there are differing opinions offered by self-proclaimed 'experts' on Bible doctrines ('teachings'). These conflicting doctrines and conflicting opinions cannot all be true. Therefore, the true child of God needs to be able to figure out which doctrines and which opinions are true and which are false. In addition, the way to determine truth cannot be based upon an opinion about the character of the person giving the doctrine. Everything that we claim to know is based upon fact or faith.

Facts can be verified independent of the person who provides the fact. Faith an action word which is based upon a belief in what a person tells us. A person who tells us something is from God, but does not provide a way to verify their claim, is actually demanding that we put our faith on the person speaking. The God of the Bible does not honor putting our faith in some other person, especially if that other person is a liar or is deceived. Someone who truly speaks for the God of the Bible will also provide the reference in the Bible which will let us verify their claim.

There are a lot of 'good-godly-Bible-believing-fundamental-KJV-only' Christians and preachers who have been deceived and Satan uses these people to deceive others. Therefore, God has given us a way to tell if a doctrine is true or not. That method is based upon verifying if a given doctrine meets the requirements within God's word or does not meet those requirements at all. That is: the doctrine is true or false independent of the person who delivers the doctrine. Therefore, just like "God is no respecter of persons" (**Acts 10:34**) so also is God's method of verifying truth "respecter of persons".

With that written, we need to consider a well-known truth of the Bible. There is one interpretation and many applications of the truth found in the Bible. You cannot start at one source and arrive at two different conclusions while using the same method. A single interpretation and multiple applications cannot result from one method. There must be one method to provide the many applications and another method to provide the single interpretation. Unfortunately, many good people have been led to believe that the method, which provides the many applications, also provides the single interpretation. Then, when someone finds a different place in the Bible which does not agree with what is claimed, because it is actually another application, people claim that the Bible has conflicts or errors. God's "perfect word" does **NOT** contain conflicts or errors. The source of the conflict or error is the method used by the person. Therefore, we need to recognize the different methods which produce these different results and use the proper method in order to find the desired result.

In addition to the prior truth, men try to use their own methods to understand God's word and they are led into error because they are not using God's way to understand God's word. This also results in error which belongs to men but which men claim belongs to God's "perfect word".

Finally, God's word said that a true application of Bible truth cannot disagree with the single interpretation. However, many people who use the way of finding the many applications wrongly claim that their particular application corrects the single interpretation.

We will get to know more about the God given methods for determining truth in a minute. However, we need to first look at different types of people who claim to represent God. This is because the Bible warns us against ministers of Satan who are made to appear as if they are ministers of light. When we meet such liars, we are to get far from them and have nothing to do with their doctrine or we can be deceived.

It is important for each of us to realize that we can be deceived. Therefore, we need to verify what we believe and not just trust some charming person. The truth is that there are some very charming religious liars who claim to represent the true God while they are truly ministers of Satan. As a result, there are two types of people who claim to teach the truth of the Bible that we need to be wary of. The first type is the honest and sincere people who have been deceived and are passing on deception. The second type of people are religious liars. Of these two, God tells us to get away from the religious liar and have nothing to do with their doctrine no matter how appealing their doctrine might be. For people who have been deceived, we are to reject their doctrinal error but not separate from the people like we are to separate from the religious liars. Instead, we are to show them the truth from the word of God.

More will be presented, later, on how to identify the differences between these two groups of people. Suffice it to say, for now, that the way to determine what type of doctrine that someone preaches is based upon exact rules and does not require us to evaluate the person. We are to use the rules, which God's word provides, to examine the doctrine independent of what we think about the person who gives us the doctrine.

Now, before we go on, we need to realize that there is another source of error even among true believers. As already mentioned, there is a true saying: *there is only one true interpretation of the Bible but many applications*. The problem with traditional books on how to study the Bible is that they concentrate on how to understand the many applications. And, as already explained, believing that method also gives the single interpretation leads to

errors. Therefore, we must keep in mind that the ways to find the never-changing truths of the Bible are different from the ways to find the many applications. And, any given application is true only if it is based upon the never-changing truths of the Bible. Therefore, the reader needs to know how to find the never-changing truths in order to verify if a given application is a Bible truth or an erroneous religious tradition. While traditional books concentrate on how to find the many applications, this book concentrates on how to find the never-changing truths.

For example, in this physical reality, we have the law of gravity and the laws of mathematics that never change for any reason. In the word of God, the fact that God hates and judges all sin is an example of a never-changing truth. Then, there are applications of those basic laws which actually vary with circumstances. For example, God gives mercy to some people while denying mercy to others. Once we realize that there are these differences, we need to know how to separate the never-changing truths from the applications of those truths which change with circumstances.

The traditional books tell you to do things like look at the person whom God used to write a given portion of the Bible. However, the only person who wrote the entire Bible is God. No human person was used to write the entire Bible. So, yes, we can consider the man for a given application but not for a truth which is throughout the Bible. Therefore, the rules for finding the never-changing truths require looking to God, from a spiritual perspective, as opposed to looking at the man from a physical perspective. Don't worry if that is not clear now. It will be made clearer later. For now, just realize that what this book teaches is different from traditional books on how to study your Bible.

Returning to the subject of non-believers, we see that one very important thing to be very aware of is that religious liars are the worst type of liars that exist because of the amount of personal damage they can cause. In addition, while there are many religions and many religious liars, the very worst type are those people who pervert the "word of God" and cause people to believe that they are obeying the God of the Bible while they are actually following a devil. Since God gave each of us a mind, God expects us to use our mind and verify a given doctrine against what His word actually says. That is why it is important to learn how to study the "word of God" so that you can verify doctrines against the "word of God" and not against your religious training, which might be wrong.

Let me illustrate. When you were young, you were taught your numbers and then taught to memorize things like $2+2=4$. Then you were taught the general rules for adding and subtracting any two numbers and most people complain about how hard it was to learn the general rules and apply them. In fact, when you also consider multiplication and division, you had several years of Math classes which were mainly practices of those general rules. Now, before you learned the general rules of Math, people could deceive you if they came up with a problem that was outside of the math answers which you had memorized. The same type of thing happens with religious answers. Most people only know the answers that they have been taught to memorize. However, if someone produces a religious problem which is outside of their memorized answers, they can be deceived.

When you were young, you had to 'grow up' in your math learning and learn the general rules of math so that you would not be deceived. Likewise, God expects His people to 'grow up' in their ability to know and apply the general rules of finding doctrinal truth. This is so that we are not deceived. We see this truth in **Ephesians 4:14**, which says: "That we *henceforth* be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, *and* cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive".

The sad truth is that many religious leaders have only matured to the point of memorizing religious doctrines and then teaching those doctrines to others. They have not learned how to tell if a doctrine is truth or not. They just assume that their religious traditions are correct. Such are like the Pharisees and religious leaders who had Jesus crucified because His doctrine disagreed with their religious traditions. Many of these modern people, including many commentators who write books, are only at the level of passing on the memorized lessons that they have been taught. Let me give you a simple way to verify my claim.

Let's return to Math. Eventually, most people get into more complex classes like Algebra and Geometry and only a few continued to take Calculus and Math classes beyond that. However, the people who actually write Math books have to take classes beyond Calculus in order to be qualified to teach and write Math books. Unfortunately, the same is not true for authors of religious books. When you took Algebra and Geometry, you were not allowed to state a problem and then state the answer without telling how you went from the statement of the problem to the answer. You had to show how you used proven rules to take a step-by-step process while you moved from the statement of the problem to the answer which you provided.

Now look at most books written by religious commentators. In over 95% of the books written, the author states a quote from the Bible and then tells you what his religious traditions claims that the verse means and continues from there to tell you how to apply his religious traditions in your life. However, **1Thessalonians 5:21** says: "Prove all things; hold fast that which is good." What the Bible calls "good" is what comes from God. America has not "held fast that which" comes from God because they were persuaded to believe religious claims instead of doing what God commands and proving the rules that they were told came from God.

If the religious traditions, of the commentator author, are correct, then you are OK. However, with all of the different doctrines and even variations among those who claim to hold the same doctrines, there must be many religious errors being passed off as God's truth. One thing that this book is going to do is to show you the basic ways to verify if a given religious tradition actually comes from the Bible or not. If any religious tradition doesn't come from the Bible, then do not follow the doctrinal error from that author.

Returning to our quote of **Ephesians 4:14**, what we see is that people who claim to be saved, but are "carried about with every wind of doctrine" are spiritual children. People who claim to be saved, but are "tossed to and fro" (church hoppers, people who are unreliable in their church attendance, etc.) are spiritual children. We also see that such people are "deceived" by religious liars. These things and much more happen to people who get saved but refuse to become spiritually mature. Not only do these things happen to them but, eventually, they receive punishment from God because of their ongoing sin, even if the people do not realize that they are sinning.

If you wish to avoid the punishment from God, then you need to 'grow up' spiritually and that includes learning how to tell the difference between doctrinal error and Bible truth. In order to do that, you need to know and understand the rules which come from the "word of God", which tell you how to make that distinction.

Let's return to our illustration. No one plans to have a baby and plans to treat the child like an infant many years later. People expect babies to mature. Likewise, God does not save people so that they can remain spiritual infants. God expect spiritual babies to mature. However, spiritual maturity uses different processes than what physical maturity uses. One of the evidences of a problem in the process of spiritual maturity is a person who claims to be saved for years and still believes that time alone brings spiritual maturity and rewards from God.

Think about when you took Algebra. Most people complain that it is 'a painful useless mental exercise learning things which they are sure that they will never use'. However, one of the main purposes of teaching Algebra is to give people a logical way of thinking that will help them solve many other kinds of problems. Likewise, this book is not how to get specific blessings from God nor is it about how to spiritually mature. However, it does teach how to verify if the ways that others teach, for getting those things, are true or not.

Often, it is more important to know if someone is telling you the truth or not than it is to know the details of what they are saying. The lessons in this book will help the truly saved to separate Bible truth from messages given by religious liars and from sincere, but deceived, religious people. That separation can only be done if the person truly matures spiritually, which is what **Ephesians 4** is telling us to do.

Now, one of the most basic lies, which is designed to keep the truly saved as spiritually immature "babes" is the lie that spiritually immature "babes", and even the lost, can 'claim' the titles that the Bible reserves for people who have achieved a certain level of spiritual maturity. The simple illustration is the claim that all saved are "Christians" while the Bible clearly teaches that many truly saved people have not matured enough, spiritually, to fulfill the

Biblical definition of a true “Christian”. In order to understand more about this truth, please see the message in the Addendum called: Thank God by Maturing. That message gives an overview of what the Bible says about different levels of spiritual maturity.

Little boys like to claim that they are big boys. Teens like to claim that they are adults. However, making a claim does not make it true in the physical reality nor does it make it true in the spiritual reality. Likewise, someone claiming to be a “Christian” does not get them the blessings that God reserves for true Biblical “Christians”.

For example, the first thing to do, in order to mature spiritually, is to stop listening to liars who are trying to drown out the voice of people proclaiming the truth. Another thing is to separate doctrine, which comes from religious traditions, from doctrine that actually comes from the Bible. The truth is that lots of people claim to be some type of expert who is qualified to correct others and to teach the Bible. However, many of them are actually at the level that is equivalent of repeating memorized lessons such as $2+2=4$. They can pass on the memorized lessons that their religious leaders passed on to them, but they have trouble figuring out what the Bible actually says, when their religious traditions don’t explain that part of the Bible. They also cannot tell you what the rules are for figuring out what the Bible says and have those rules work all of the time. Most have been taught rules which work most of the time but fail in some instances. Those rules are not from God because God never fails.

Now, God gave each of us a brain, and God wrote the “word of God” to guide us and God gave every saved person the indwelling Holy Ghost to help them to understand what God wrote in His word. God also gave commands like: “Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.” (**2Timothy 2:15**). Therefore, the child of God who fails to do what God means by the word “study” has failed to obey the command of God. Further, **2Timothy 2:15** says that, if we fail to obey the command, then we “needeth to be ashamed” and the “th” on the end of the word “needeth” means this is an ongoing need. In addition, if a child of God needs something then God gives it to them, either here in this life or in eternity. Therefore, any child of God who fails to truly study their Bible is going to be made ashamed by God. This means that you don’t just accept what some religious person tells you about what the Bible says but that you use the true methods of “study” to personally verify what someone tells you about what the Bible is saying.

Now, many liars and deceived people claim that “study” means something less than what God meant when God had Paul write **2Timothy 2:15** in His word. For example, people claim that if you go to church and listen to the religious teaching, then you have done what God commands. Others claim that if you read your Bible then you have done what God commands. However, those claims are lies or deceptions passed on by deceived people.

Think about learning Math. Listening to someone rattle off memorized numbers or memorized addition problems did not give you the ability to solve any Math problem. Likewise, listening to religious lessons or even reading the Bible does not help you apply the Bible to the problems of life. And, yes, you can go to your pastor or another church member and ask for help, but you cannot always do that. And, at some point, you become the older church member that people look to for help. Therefore, for lots of reasons, you need to learn how to study the Bible and you need to practice those rules on how to study so that you can understand what God put into His Word for you to understand and obey. Remember, you had several years of Math classes in order to help you become proficient at Math. The same applies to studying your Bible.

Obedience is probably one of the most important reasons for being able to study the Bible. God rewards obedience and punishes disobedience. In the Bible, we read many times when God punished his people for obeying religious leaders who told them to do the wrong thing. And, we have lots of religions which claim to be Bible based but which also tell us to do all kinds of different things. Therefore, there is a lot of error which is passed off as being a command from God. Further, the devil loves it when God’s people obey a religious leader and are punished by God instead of being rewarded by God. People end up being confused and the devil sends someone to tell them that God can’t be trusted. This causes many people to be angry and bitter and to quit church or to, at least, stop trying to serve God.

Anyone who is truly saved received God’s salvation and will go to Heaven. However, God also planned for them to receive God’s blessings while they are here in this life. **John 10:10** says: “The thief cometh not, but for to steal,

and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have *it* more abundantly.” God wants you to have His blessings in this life in addition to knowing that you are going to Heaven. However, this requires you to obey God and, in order to properly obey; you need to know how to separate true Bible doctrine from error and lies.

Finally, in order to separate truth from error and lies, you need to know how to study the Bible and you need to study the Bible for yourself so that you obey God’s command and so that you can properly obey God’s word in order to get God’s blessings.

Ephesians 4:14 tells us to grow up spiritually in order to not be deceived.

One commonly believed lie is that all saved people are Christians and saints and that they will receive all of the blessings of the Bible while staying spiritual babes. The Bible names different categories of spiritual maturity such as; child of God, babe, carnal, baptized church member, disciple, son, Christian, and saint. Each level of spiritual maturity receives greater rewards than the lower level.

The parables of the pounds and of the talents teach variable rewards given in Heaven and that some saved people will be eternal poor people because they did not do what God commanded in order to receive rewards. So, unless you want to be poor for eternity, you need to grow up spiritually and that requires being able to study and understand the Bible for yourself.

When God tells us His way to understand His word, he tells us that the first thing to do is to stop listening to religious liars. In order to do that, we need to obey the Bible’s instructions on how to identify religious liars. After we identify them, we need to stop listening to them no matter how much we like some of the things which they say.

- The Bible tells us: “A little leaven leaveneth the whole lump.” (**Galatians 5:9** and **1Corinthians 5:6**). That is: accepting a little doctrinal error will, eventually, lead us to believing doctrinal error for all of our relationship with God.
- **Isaiah 28:1-8** warns us that people who excuse physical sin or who replace our ongoing personal relationship with Jesus are religious liars.
- **Romans 6:16 says:** “Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?”
 - Religious liars will tell you not to obey the Bible.
 - They will claim that it is OK to keep sinning and not receive God’s righteousness.
 - They will lead you to an early physical death or a lesser punishment such as divorce or separation.
 - They will lead you to cause your children to die lost and have the “second death”.
- **1John 4:1** says: “Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world.”
 - When you “try” something, you test it over and over again until you are very confident of the answer. Someone who gives you the truth from the word of God will have a personal character like God. God hates sin and true messengers not only refuse to excuse sin but preach against sin.
 - We are to repeatedly test to see if the religious leader displays the character of God in their life and if they encourage us to receive the character of God or if they make excuses for sin.
- When Satan tempted Jesus, he quoted the Bible. But Satan left out part of what he quoted in order to pervert the Word of God. At least 85% of doctrinal error can be eliminated if we look at the place in the Bible where the person references and see if they are taking it out of context.
 - One example is where people use **1Peter 3:2** to claim that we have to be physically baptized in order to receive spiritual salvation. However, the context is talking about physical salvation. A person who has accepted Jesus as their Lord, but has not been scripturally baptized by a proper church does not get the physical protection in this world that God offers to baptized believers. In **Mark 8:38** and **Luke 9:26**, Jesus says that he will be ashamed of you if you are ashamed of Him. Saved people who refuse to be baptized are telling the world that they are ashamed of Jesus.

- Many people only pay attention to see if the person claims to quote scripture but they never verify what the person claims from the Bible reference. That is how many people are deceived. Make sure that you note the Bible reference used by someone and verify what the Bible actually says, within the context, to see if the person is honest. Stop listening to all liars.

Jesus Christ is our God-given example on how to live godly. He left everything that He personally had in Heaven so that He could come here and live like an ordinary man and die to pay for our sins. As the true word of God tells us, His life was composed of sacrifice and service to God the Father. In addition, Jesus is our example on how to live in this world and the Gospels tell us how He dealt with different situations. The Doctrinal Study, on ljc1611kjv.com, has references to places in the Gospels which tell us What Would Jesus Do?

One of the most important things to do is to look at the method used by the preacher / teacher to give you their doctrine. Ignore the credentials they claim and look at the method used. When Satan tempted “Jesus” he quoted scripture. There was nothing wrong with what he quoted. The problem was that he took the quote out of context in order to pervert it. Anyone who quotes scripture out of context is using the method of Satan. If you eliminate all such voices from influencing your beliefs about God and the Bible, you will eliminate the vast majority (over 85%) of doctrinal error. Sticking with the context is one of the most important rules for finding truth.

The word “of” is defined as “belongs to”. The “word of God” is the written message (“word”) from the most powerful and wise being in all of existence (“God”). Most people call the “word of God” a “Bible”. The problem with that word is that a lot of men and groups of men have written their own perversion of “the word of God” and called their own book a “bible”. Thus, they cause confusion as to what is the true meaning of the word “bible”. They want you to be confused and to believe that their perversions is equal to the true “word of God”. They claim that the true “word of God” is just another version of their perversions. They hope that you will accept their book as if it is the true “word of God”.

When men do this, they receive fame and are elevated in this world for a short time even though they and their followers will eventually be punished severely by the true God. In spite of this eventuality, they do it for the short-term glory. Further, God allows them to do so because it is a test for others. All who follow their lies and errors are punished along with the authors of the perverted so-called bibles and other sources of false doctrines. Therefore, everyone needs to verify that the bible, which they use, is the true “word of God”. The true “word of God” has proofs within it which the perversions can’t match but people need to use the brain that God gave them to find and verify those internal proofs. This book provides some of the ways to find that evidence.

One important distinction is that the true “word of God” reports accounts of things which actually happened -- it does not ‘tell stories’. This difference may be subtle but it is critical. A story conveys the idea that part, or all, of the story is not true. A true account must be a complete truth which will stand up to extensive examination and can be used in a court of law. Since we must each appear in God’s court to be judged for the works done in the flesh, it is critical that we base our decisions of what to do upon a reliable and true account and not on some unreliable story.

Next, the true “word of God” records, in **John 4:24**, “God *is* a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship *him* in spirit and in truth.” There are other spirits in existence, as witnessed by the true “word of God” and millions of people all around the world. These other spirits claim to be ‘gods’ and wish to be worshipped. They do have power to cause changes to this physical reality and those changes are called miracles since they are beyond the limits of the laws of this physical reality. Therefore, the existence of a miracle does not prove that the message comes from the true God of the true Bible. In addition, **Ephesians 4:14** warns us to beware of “the sleight of men, *and* cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive”. The fact is that some so-called ‘miracles’ are not true “miracles” and, when such are exposed, they cast doubt on all miracles, even on true “miracles”.

At least one religion claims that there are at least 100 million gods. While we cannot be positive of the number, we can know that there are a lot. In addition, they are known to cause mischief unless the person gets a stronger 'god' to protect them. (I have traveled through some of the lands where these religions are prevalent and many people have a 'god house' where they worship and make sacrifices hoping to attract a strong 'god' to stay and protect their place from weaker mischievous 'gods').

The true God, Who wrote the "word of God", also gave each of us a free will and allows people to worship and serve the false 'gods'. However, He also tells His true children to go proclaim the truth to everyone. Thus, the main discernible difference between the true God of the "word of God" and these other 'gods' is His character. While these other gods will hurt people, who do not belong to them, the true God of the "word of God" will leave people alone or even bless them. He does not hurt people who do not belong to Him, even though he often is blamed for things which he did not cause. Therefore, we need to be careful to be sure what the true cause of problems is before assigning a spiritual blame.

We also need to discern the character of the spirit causing any given problem because that is how we can tell the difference between the true God, of the "word of God", and other spirits. That is also why the true God, of the "word of God", tells His children to receive His character. The character of the person representing a spirit often reflects the character of the spirit. Therefore, true children of God need to study the "word of God" so that they can learn and receive the character of the true God of the "word of God".

Finally, as the end of our introduction, we need to consider **1Corinthians 2:14**. It says: "But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned." The phrase "natural man" refers to the way that we are born. The true "word of God" is a "thing of the Spirit of God" since "God is a Spirit". As many honest people can testify, it does them little good to study the "word of God" in their natural ability. But, as Peter tells us in **Acts 2:14-21**, God will "pour out of my Spirit upon...whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord". We must accept Jesus Christ as our personal "Lord" before God gives us His "Holy Spirit" and we must have His "Holy Spirit" before we can truly understand what the true "word of God" says.

Some things can only be learned by experience. If a child is hanging out the second story of a burning building, they must have faith in your promise to catch them if they jump. The child that refuses to act by faith ends up burning to death. Likewise, we must have faith in the true God of the Bible to accept Jesus Christ as our personal "Lord". After that, His "Holy Spirit" will help us to understand the "word of God". We will learn how to have His provision and protection and we will learn how to have the best rewards and position in eternity and much more. However, those people who refuse to accept Jesus Christ as their personal "Lord" are like the child who refuses to jump out of the burning building. They will spend eternity in a "lake of fire" as promised by the God of the Bible and they will do so because they refused to believe His word.

How to Study in General

Our attitude, in general, is often one of the major, if not the major, factors in determining our success at any given endeavor. People who build big muscles often claim that “pain is just weakness leaving the body”; where people with weak muscles are ready to quit as soon as they experience discomfort. More than one professional athlete has claimed that they met people with more natural skill than they had when they were young. However, the person with greater skill did not reach the professional level because they lacked the required attitude and motivation.

Ecclesiastes 9:11 says: “I returned, and saw under the sun, that the race *is* not to the swift, nor the battle to the strong, neither yet bread to the wise, nor yet riches to men of understanding, nor yet favour to men of skill; but time and chance happeneth to them all.” For the saved person, there is no such thing as “chance” but God directly causes, or allows, everything that happens in the life of the saved person. **Hebrews 11:6** says: “But without faith *it is* impossible to please *him*: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and *that* he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.”

In my experience, diligence is the main factor in determining how close each of us reaches to our potential. Stop blaming your failures and disappointments on circumstances or on other people and get a determination to be diligent in whatever you pursue.

1. Attitude:

- a. You are no longer in High School. You must be responsible for yourself.
- b. You are here to learn about God and how God can direct and bless your life.
- c. Some things are only learned through experience. Jobs given to you while in Bible School are given because they need to be done but also so that you can learn to do the ministry with a godly attitude.
- d. Study is designed to get knowledge and understanding into your brain so that you can use it to help your life. Keep in mind why you are studying a given subject and avoid distractions. Have a goal for your study and keep focused on that goal.
- e. Secular college teaches you how to make a living in this world. Bible school teaches you how to live. **Mark 8:36** says: “For what shall it profit a man, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own soul?” The purpose of Bible School is to teach you how to grow your soul. That is: how to have the mind of Christ, how to do the will of the Father like Jesus did, and how to react emotionally like Jesus Christ teaches such as loving your enemies and praying for them who spitefully use you.

2. Practical:

- a. Paper is not that expensive. Get a separate notebook for each class. At a minimum, put notes in a notebook from the start for one class and flip over for notes for another class starting from back.
- b. Order:
 - God is a God of order. Creation and our ability to discover the order in math, true science and other ordered things in nature reveal this truth. In addition, God's word reveals this truth.
 - "Let all things be done decently and in order." (**1Corinthians 14:40**).
 - "Whoso offereth praise glorifieth me: and to him that ordereth *his* conversation *aright* will I shew the salvation of God." (**Psalms 50:23**).
- c. Always carry pen and paper and write notes to self as reminders.
- d. Keep a calendar with events and due dates
- e. Have a separate notebook for each class.
- f. Get a bag to keep Bible and study materials in. Use plastic until you can use cloth.

3. Procedure:

- a. How do you eat an elephant or a cow? One bite at a time.
 - i. First you kill it. Make sure that it is something that you can eat and that it is good for you. You can't eat a live large animal -- you can die from eating poison. Even if something can be eaten, it sometimes needs proper preparation first.
 - ii. Next, you separate what is edible from what is not. Spiritually, this means to separate what will help you to mature and grow spiritually from what will not (even if it makes you feel good).
 - iii. Next, you divide the carcass into major parts. Any significant set of knowledge can be subdivided. The "word of God" teaches us how to worship God, how to have a good marriage, how to participate in the ministry of God and other major subjects.
 - iv. Next, you cut the major sections into meal sizes and prepare it for a meal. Spiritually, this is taking the truth of God, on a given subject, and adding applications of that truth so that we can use it in our life to help us grow.
 - v. Next, you cut the meal into bite-sized pieces and eat it. Spiritually, this means taking what is served in a message and swallowing the relevant parts so that it can become part of your life.
 - vi. Next, your digestive system breaks down the food into smaller parts and uses those parts to build your life. Spiritually, this means meditating on the message and applying it to your life until it becomes part of you.
 - vii. Next, your body passes out the parts of food which it does not use. Spiritually, there will be things said in a message which do not apply to you. There are things in the "word of God", such as prophecy about how God will deal with the Jews during the tribulation, which do not apply to you. Yes, lots of people like to spend time on those subjects but they are a distraction from the parts of the "word of God" that will truly help you. Parts of messages and parts of the Bible which God shows you that they do not apply to you let go on and spend your time on what can truly help you and what you can use to help others.
- b. How to memorize.
 - i. If it is a large passage, break it down into bite-sized pieces. For example, when memorizing a chapter in the "word of God", memorize one verse or sentence at a time and add new pieces to what is memorized only after the earlier parts are firmly in memory.
 - ii. Read the entire section to be memorized and be sure that you first understand its message. Then, when breaking it into pieces to memorize, be sure that you understand the details of each piece to be memorized.
 - iii. Read the passage that you want to memorize; out loud and ten times in a row while looking at each word and punctuation mark in the written version of what is being memorized.
 - iv. Add appropriate length pauses for punctuation marks and add emphasis, as appropriate, to the sections within the passage being memorized.
 - v. Next, read the passage out loud, write it down, then verify every word and every punctuation mark. Repeat ten times.
 - vi. Next, say the passage aloud and then verify what you said against the written version. Repeat ten times.
 - vii. Next, write the passage and then verify what you wrote against the written version. Repeat ten times.
 - viii. Repeat the memorized passage daily for ten days and then weekly for as long as you want to retain it.
- c. How to study a book, especially a technical book.
 - i. If a book has a "Table of Contents", then read it first every time you open the book to study. This gives you the structure and order that the author put his book into and helps to organize the information in your brain instead of trying to keep a lot of information that seems to be unrelated in your brain. God is orderly. God made us in His image. That means that keeping information in your brain is easier if you keep it orderly.

- ii. Read the first and last sentences of each chapter when you first start on the book. This gives you a good overview of the book. Even when you need to get details from a book but don't have time to read it in detail, this will often help you to find what you are looking for. If the book has an Index, do a fast read of it and pick up only about every tenth word in the Index. This is called skimming the book.
- iii. After doing the prior step, first skim each section that you will study before reading the detail. Do this by reading the first and last sentences in each paragraph within a chapter and do it every time you study a chapter or section of the book. Read through the entire section before trying to understand all of the technical details that are contained within the section of the book. This is called skimming the section of the book.
If you don't have time to read in detail, skimming will give you an idea of what is in the section. If you have skimmed the section before reading it in detail, then later skimming will usually refresh a lot of the details in your brain. If you make a practice of skimming before reading the details then, when you need to deal with a new subject but don't have time to do a detailed study, you can often pick up a lot by skimming the book on the new subject. However, this only works if you have trained your brain to skim.
- iv. Have a notebook and take notes as you study. Write down important things that the author presents. Write down anything that you don't completely understand and put into your own words whatever you believe that you do understand. The process of writing uses a different part of your brain than reading does and the more parts of your brain that you engage the better your understanding will be. In addition, the process of writing something down will often clarify it for you. Further, when you stop to put something into your own words, you engage in what is called "meditation", to a small part. This also increases understanding.
- v. After you finish studying a section, let it rest at the back of your brain for a while. Later during the day, bring it forward into your active brain and think about how you can apply the knowledge gained by your study. It takes time to train your brain but after some time, your subconscious brain will start sorting and processing data while your conscience is dealing with other things. This process improves over the years that you use it. After a time of doing this process, you will find that your subconscious brain gives you insights that your conscious brain misses.
- vi. When the saved person ends their study session with a prayer of thanks for the help that God gave them, and asks God to help their meditation, with a true belief that God will do so, they will find that the prior step increases the results achieved and this is true for any given subject.

4. Plan:

- a. **Time:** Have a regular time to read your “word of God” and pray and to study for each class. God blesses the faithful person. Do the same for any subject that you study. In general, the best time to do homework is as soon as possible after class on a given subject. That is when the prior lesson is the freshest in your mind and homework is usually based upon the lesson which came before the homework. Therefore, that is the time when the homework will be easiest to do and will require the least amount of time to accomplish.
- b. **Place:** Find a place where you can read and study your “word of God”, or other text book, without distractions. Jesus said to go to your closet to pray likewise, find a private place to study anything that you wish to learn.
- c. **Homework** is supposed to help you learn a subject better than just listening in class and taking notes. Some things are only learned through personal experience. Homework should give you some experience in dealing with the subject on your own. Therefore, homework should not be dreaded but should be considered as a tool that is designed to provide greater understanding of the given subject.
- d. **Keep records** and don't rely on memory. Classes you don't do well on require more time to study. Keeping records on those subjects makes it easier to recall the details related to that particular subject, especially when you have not thought about the subject for a while but need to deal with it at a later time.
- e. **Keep class notes.** You will wish you had them after school is done and you are given a job which requires you to use what you were supposed to learn in school.
- f. **Study partners:** Try to find people who understand the subject better than you do. Plan a time to review lessons on a regular basis and especially before any significant test. The fast-learner students will have their egos stroked while helping the weaker. However, these study sessions also help the students better because the best way to learn is to teach others. Other people tend to think about things differently than we do and their questions make us consider different perspectives on the given subject.
- g. **Set a time** to meet other students in each class and give each other your own version of tests. Coming up with questions to test others helps you to study the subject and questions from others, that you can't answer, and lets you know where you are weak before you get the test from the teacher.
- h. If you have a book, try to read the chapter before the teacher teaches it. All students “zone out” during classes. If you read the subject before it is taught then you will know when you can “zone out” and when you need to pay extra attention. You will also know what you had trouble understanding and will know what questions to ask. In addition to getting you the answers that you need, this tends to make you appear to be a good student, unless the teacher is incompetent. It also tends to get you the ‘benefit of the doubt’ when the teacher is grading tests.

5. Tools:

a. Computer:

- i. Learning to use the computer is not optional for youth of today. In the past, your parents thought learning to use phones was optional for Bible School. Look at how phones are required in the ministry today. The same applies to computers and your future ministries of tomorrow.
- ii. Computers in office.
- iii. Web site on computers.
- iv. Dangers of computers and social media.
- v. Dangers of social media replacing interpersonal skills.

b. Books:

- i. Beware of errors in books. People tend to trust anything in writing but written things often contain errors.
- ii. Some books are more technical in detail and some are better at giving you an overview. Each has their place in helping you. You probably will prefer one type or the other but don't neglect the less preferred type as each type can help.

c. Notes:

- i. Realize that your notes have at least two purposes. They help you to better learn and understand the subject when you are first picking it up and they also help you recall the details later when you need the details but have been away from the subject long enough that it is no longer fresh in your memory.

d. Other people:

- ii. Use classmates to study together and share understanding of subjects studied.
- iii. Use classmates to review material before a test.
- i. Class mates can become life-long friends to help discuss further subjects related to the "word of God" such as how it applies to problems of life encountered later in ministry.

Reliability of your Bible

We need to know that what we study is reliable or else we will not have the required level of faith for it to do us any good.

1. God wrote His “word of God” to reveal Himself.

2 Corinthians 2:17 “For we are not as many, which corrupt the word of God: but as of sincerity, but as of God, in the sight of God speak we in Christ.”

- a. When God’s people spoke and understood in Hebrew, God revealed Himself in Hebrew. When God’s people spoke and understood in Aramaic, God revealed Himself in Aramaic. When the trade language of the world became Greek, God revealed Himself in Greek. When the trade language of the world became English, God had His revealed word interpreted into English as well. The basic purpose of God’s word is to reveal God to people. Hence, having God’s word in a language that most people don’t understand defeats the basic purpose of God’s revealed word.
- b. God put His word into writing so that people could verify what the so-called religious experts claim. The fact that we have so many competing and contradicting doctrines which all claim to be Bible-based proves that there are a lot of liars claiming to be Bible experts. God gave each of us a brain. He put His word into writing and He expects you to verify your beliefs against His written word. ‘Ignorance of the law is no excuse when you are judged’.
- c. People who claim that God’s true word is hidden in a language that only scholars understand, and do not understand completely, are claiming that you can’t trust what God gave to you but must put your ultimate trust into what they say. They are lifting themselves up to the position which our Bible says is reserved for Jesus Christ alone. If they criticize the Roman Catholic Church and the pope for claiming to be the final authority on God’s word in this world, they prove themselves to be hypocrites. When they claim that God’s true word is hidden in a language that they understand but you don’t understand, they are claiming the same position as the pope. When they criticize the pope for doing the same thing as they do, they prove themselves to be hypocrites.
- d. People who claim that ‘we have a God breathed word of God’ are claiming an incomplete truth. This was how Satan tempted Jesus. The word ‘have’ is present tense while the word ‘had’ is past tense. We no longer have the ‘originals’, which were the ‘God breathed word of God’. What we have today is the God preserved word of God in the KJV-1611. And, we have a promise in the word of God that God would preserve His word “to a thousand generations” (**Deuteronomy 7:9; 1Chronicles 16:15; Psalms 105:8**). God did not preserve His word, “to a thousand generations” in an ‘original’ which no longer exists. God also did not preserve His word “to a thousand generations” in a language that the current generation cannot understand. We need to stop believing liars who claim that only their expertise, in a language which we do not understand, can reveal God’s truth. We need to trust what God has preserved for us, which is the English KJV-1611.
- e. Pretty much everyone has heard of the ‘Ten Commandments’, even if they can’t say what those are. The First is: “I *am* the LORD thy God, which brought thee out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage. Thou shalt have none other gods before me.” (**Exodus 20:2-3, Deuteronomy 5:6-7**). When someone insists that they have to stand between God and you, in order to interpret what God’s word truly says, they are demanding that you break this commandment by putting them “before God” in God giving you commandments.
- f. **John 1:1** says: “In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.” **John 1:14** says: “And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.” Imagine someone taking a picture of some ugly old

person and telling everyone that it was your picture. You would be upset with them and call them liars. Imagine someone taking your picture and using software to change it into a monster and then telling everyone that it's your picture. You would be upset with them and call them liars as well. Our references in John tell us that the "word of God" is our God-given picture of Jesus. These man-written perversions do not show us the character of the Son of God but show us the character of a devil.

- g. Every person who switches to a man-written so-called bible wants to live a life of sin and believes that 'God understands' and will reward them for their life of sin. In the time that Jesus was on this Earth living as a physical man, God's people were religious but refused to be holy and have a personal relationship with God. They expected God to give them the kingdom while they refused God's King because they did not want to obey His laws. They wanted God to reward them for obeying their own laws which they had added to God's law and which made God's Law "of none effect" (**Matthew 15:6; Mark 7:13; Romans 4:14; 1Corinthians 1:17; Galatians 3:17**). People do the same today with their man-written so-called bibles. They expect the rapture and hope to be rewarded with the kingdom of Christ while they live in sin and refuse to accept the commandments of Christ which are written in the English KJV-1611.

2. English KJV1611

- a. It is the Trade Language of the world today.
 - i. God's word is being translated into many languages around the world. However, the language used for trade all around the world is English. It is the closest to being a universally accepted language for the world.
 - ii. It is not reasonable to expect the first translation into any language to be perfect to the level of having every punctuation mark and every word perfect; including all capitalization or usage of lower-case. However, God uses what is interpreted to lead people to salvation. The KJV 1611 is the seventh "purification" of the English language Bible (**Psalms 12:6**). Each "purification" started with what was already interpreted and only cleaned up mistakes. The successive purifications did not start from the "original languages" like people claim to do today.
 - iii. While earlier versions were not "perfect", they were sufficient for leading people to salvation and caused them to mature spiritually, at least at the basic levels that most people stick to. The differences that scholars argue over do not affect most people. Therefore, the differences between one English translation and another did not truly affect most people in their everyday life. This same truth applies to Bibles being translated into other languages today. The first interpretation may not be "perfect" but it, usually, is sufficient for leading people to salvation and teaching the basics of a truly changed Christian life.
 - iv. At the time that the KJV1611 was interpreted from the manuscripts, the Greek of the Manuscripts (*Coine Greek*) was still spoken by scholars as a way of communicating between scholars. No one does that today. That level of communication is required for true interpretation of a document from one language into another language. That is, while scholars were qualified to translate the Greek of the manuscripts in 1611, **NO** scholar is qualified today because no one speaks it conversationally.
 - v. English is spoken conversationally and understood by many people today. People from almost every group of people around the world understand English and can speak it conversationally today. Therefore, God has revealed Himself to all people of the world in the English KJV1611.
 - vi. No one in the world is excluded from understanding God's word in the English KJV1611. All people are excluded from understanding the Greek of the Bible at the level required for interpretation. The English KJV-1611 can be understood well enough to help understand what is said in a given part of the Bible, which are the many applications. Other languages can also be used for this purpose. Most people are not qualified to say what is the single interpretation which must be proven to be the same all across the Bible. As will be shown later, applications are different from interpretation and requires less scholarship and technical knowledge. How to apply the word of God is all that most people need in their life.
- b. The KJV-1611 is not just God-inspired but is God-preserved.
 - i. **Psalms 12:6-7** "The words of the LORD *are* pure words: *as* silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times. Thou shalt keep them, O LORD, thou shalt preserve them from this generation for ever." God did not "preserve" His word in a language that people could not understand
 - ii. **1John 5:7-8** "For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the holy Ghost: and these three are one. And there are three that bear witness in earth, the spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one."
 - iii. God preserved His word unto 1,000 generations.
 - **Deuteronomy 7:9** Know therefore that the LORD thy God, he *is* God, the faithful God, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love him and keep his commandments to a thousand generations;
 - **1 Chronicles 16:15** Be ye mindful always of his covenant; the word *which* he commanded to a thousand generations;

- **Psalms 105:8** He hath remembered his covenant for ever, the word *which* he commanded to a thousand generations.
- c. Denying God's preservation is an attack on God's character. It is a claim that God gave us one "book of the law" to live by and then uses a different one to judge us by and that is the character of Satan. God's "book of the law" is with us today to guide us and it is the same book that God will use to judge us.
- The phrase "book of the law" is found in: **Deuteronomy 29:21; Deuteronomy 30:10; De 31:26; Joshua 1:8; Joshua 8:31,34; Joshua 23:6; Joshua 24:26; 2Kings 14:6; 2Kings 22:8,11; 2Chronicles 17:9; 2Chronicles 34:14-15; Nehemiah 8:1,3,18; Nehemiah 9:3; Galatians 3:10.** The reader is encouraged to look at each of those references, in context, to fully understand what the "word of God" says about this phrase. Simply put, this is a written copy of what God will use to judge every person. Imagine that someone was charged with murder in a country which had capital punishment. When brought into the court of a judge who believed in swift punishment, they told the judge that criminals from another country had rewritten the law of that country. They then told that judge that he had to use the re-written law which said that the murderer could not be prosecuted, and had to be compensated for being arrested. Anyone but a fool would understand that the judge would tell the person that they were mistaken, if the judge did not use stronger language. Yet, millions of fools believe exactly this foolishness about God and His word after learning about God letting millions of His people be murdered because they rejected His rule through His Christ. Think about these facts and we will move on.
- d. The KJV-1611 is our set of commandments from God for our faith and practice. Every person, whom I've ever met and who rejects the KJV-1611, is accepting a doctrine that God will reward them for a life spent pursuing the lusts of the flesh and the wisdom of this world. Both of those teach us to go in the opposite direction from the wisdom of God according to the first three chapters of 1Corinthians. The "liberal" life-style, which is based upon a man-written bible, goes against God's absolute law called the "Law of Sowing and Reaping". You have a better chance of reaping apples from a poison ivy vine than you have of reaping eternal rewards from God after living a "liberal" life based upon a man-written so-called bible.
- e. In the Bible, the capitalized "Word" is a name for Jesus Christ. The preserved "word" is the message of the entire Bible. The preserved "words" is each and every word in the true "word of God" with the Biblical definition attached to each and every word (**Deuteronomy 8:3; Proverbs 30:5; Matthew 4:4; Matthew 18:16; Luke 4:4**). While there are many applications of words in the Bible, each and every word has a single definition (interpretation) which is unique (different from the definition of every other word in the Bible). In addition, God said that He would preserve every punctuation mark ("jot and tittle" [**Matthew 5:18; Luke 16:17**]). Together, these make up the parts of sentences which is what God's word tells us that God uses to give His people "knowledge and understanding" (**Isaiah 28:9-14**). Every claim of 'problems' or 'errors' or 'conflicts' in the KJV-1611 is made by people who use the wrong way to interpret the "word of God" or is deceived fools who believe the deception received from other men without verifying what they were told. When we use God's method of interpretation on the "word of God", we receive the perfectly preserved message of God which tells us to stop our sinning and become holy and righteous like God is.
- f. God said that He would preserve His word unto every Generation. He did not say that He would preserve the 'original language'. What God preserved is the message. We find, in the Gospels, where Jesus referenced the Old Testament and gave the same message using different words than we read in the Old Testament. We read in the Gospels where the same message is reported by different Gospel authors but there is a slight difference in the exact words used. What we see there is that God allowed His authors freedom of expression so long as they delivered His message and only His message. Once they had written His message, God preserved what they wrote. However, God did not demand that they use the exact same words to deliver His message.

3. Other Languages

a. Spanish

- Reportedly, there are three or more versions of the Bible in Spanish and all have questionable accuracy with at least one pushed by the Catholic Church. Spain was heavily involved in the Inquisition of the Middle Ages. Most, if not all, countries and cultures that use the Spanish language have a strong presence of the Roman Catholic Church and the religious attitude found in Jewish traditions of allowing religious traditions to dictate changes to God's word and persecute and kill anyone who questions the absolute authority of church representatives. I have been on a mission trip where the local priest ordered men of a town to physically attack people for handing out Spanish language tracts in their town. The point is that as long as any religious organization dictates the doctrine taught to people then the interpretation of God's word into their language will probably reflect their doctrines as much or more than the pure doctrines from God. I do not speak nor read Spanish but I have been told, by several experts, that there is no reliable Bible in the Spanish language. Therefore, just because a language has their so-called bible, that does not mean that there is a reliable "word of God" in that language.

b. German

- The German language Bible is, reportedly, the work of Martin Luther. According to history, he started out as a Roman Catholic priest and started the Protestant movement which ended up creating the Lutheran Church. While they teach some doctrinal errors, such as requiring physical baptism for salvation, many Lutherans also teach a basically sound doctrine of having a personal relationship with Jesus Christ. Unfortunately, their emphasis on religious education and trusting their educated priests gives them a religion which appears to be a modern version of the religion of the Pharisees. Their religion aside, I have been told that their German Bible is basically sound. What this shows us, as can also be seen in the history of the Jews, is that a group of people can have a reliable "word of God" and still be led into doctrinal error if they fail to use their brain and their personal relationship with God that is through the Holy Spirit to verify everything that they are told comes from the "word of God". It is not enough to have a reliable Bible. People also need a reliable study method and personal relationship with God which requires them to be diligent in their personal study.

c. Hiligaynon

- This is one of the Filipino languages that have a Bible translated into it. It is representative of the many languages where the Bible was interpreted into the language by a committee of honest people who were doing their best to put the "word of God" into the language which is understood by a language group. I tell the Filipino preachers to use what God gave to them. It may not be 'perfect', but it is unlikely that the doctrine, which they are preaching and teaching, will rely on any 'error' which may be in that language. If they run into such a problem, then they can rely on the English. However, when dealing with people who have trouble understanding English, trust what God gave that they can understand. For the most part, these people only want to know how to apply the word of God in their life and what God gave to them is sufficient for that. If any of them want to become enough of a scholar to argue about particular words or phrases, let them learn English and then argue with God about what He truly preserved unto us.

4. So-called “original languages”.

- a. The Bible is called the “book of the law” (**Deuteronomy 29:21; Deuteronomy 30:10; Deuteronomy 31:26; Joshua 1:8; Jos 8:31,34; Joshua 23:6; Joshua 24:26; 2Kings 14:6; 2Kings 22:8,11; 2Chronicles 17:9; 2Chronicles 34:14-15; Nehemiah 8:1,3,18; Nehemiah 9:3; Galatians 3:10**). Ask any honest lawyer and they will tell you that there can be only **ONE** “original” for any given legal document. The claim of multiple “originals” is a lie from Satan.
- b. God’s “original language” was Hebrew. When God’s people spoke and thought in Hebrew, God revealed Himself in Hebrew. When God’s people spoke and thought in Aramaic, God revealed Himself in Aramaic. When God’s people spoke and thought in Greek, God revealed Himself in Greek. When the trade language of the world changed to English, God had His word interpreted to English. Claiming that God preserved His word, in a language that this generation does not understand, is a lie from Satan. It claims that God lied when He said that He would “preserve His word unto every generation”.
- c. People claim that they trust in the “originals”, meaning original documents which are a lie. All that we have are manuscripts which are copies of copies several times removed from the “original documents”. There are no “originals”. Using the manuscripts is relying on God’s preservation through the copy process.
- d. There are, reportedly, about 5,000 manuscripts. Three (3) were rejected by the KJV translators as perversions from Satan.
 - a. One is called the “vaticanus” and is, reportedly, held in the Vatican (held by the Roman Catholic Church) and only certain selected priests are allowed to see it. Everyone else is told to believe whatever the Roman Catholic Church claims, which makes them the true authority instead of the written document.
 - b. One is called the “Santiaiancus” and, reportedly, came out of the trash in an abandoned cave. It, reportedly, has no spacing between words, no punctuation and is all capitalized. This allows constructing several different phrases from the same set of letters and renders it unreliable.
 - c. The third is called the “Alexandrian Script” and comes from the center of worldly religion at the time of the early church, the birth place of Islam and the source of Satanic doctrines such as the denial of the Trinity. That is: it represents the offerings from the “doctrines of devils” (**1Timothy 4:1**).
 - d. Reportedly, these three manuscripts are the source of all “new corrected bibles” in the English language. The basis of all of these is a belief that men and devils can rewrite God’s law and dictate to God the basis of His judgment of us.
- e. There is a matching claim that people are using the “oldest manuscripts”, which is a lie. Reportedly, the oldest manuscript is in Old Latin and agrees 100% with the KJV-1611. The Greek is not the “oldest manuscript” and people who claim otherwise are deliberately deceiving their listeners.
- f. Ask any of these self-proclaimed authorities which manuscript is in their own personal possession and how they know that their manuscript is better than all of the others. I have yet to hear of any individual possessing the manuscripts. Most are owned by historical societies which support the KJV-1611 in the English language. What’s more, few of these have seen or handled manuscripts, which I have done.

5. “Textus Receptus”

Many people claim that they trust the “Textus Receptus”. This is another good-sounding lie.

1. First of all, no one, who is alive today, is qualified to interpret the Greek which manuscripts were written in. In the past scholars could but no one today is qualified to do so since no one speaks it in a conversational mode. When the Bible was interpreted to English, the scholars used that Greek language to converse when they had different primary languages. So, they were qualified to interpret it, since they had a ‘conversational knowledge’ of the language in addition to knowing the formal rules of grammar and the formal definitions of words. However, no one today has a ‘conversational knowledge’ of the language. Therefore, nobody is qualified to be properly qualified to interpret the Greek of the New Testament, which is where all of these arguments originated.
2. People claim that it is better to use the ‘original languages’. However, God’s ‘original language’ was Hebrew. When His people thought and spoke in other languages, God switched to the language they used. Therefore, this is another claim from a devil and does not match the proven action of God.
3. In order to properly interpret a language, you must understand figures of speech. People would have to understand when something needs to be interpreted spiritually or symbolically instead of literally. They would have to understand to cultural contexts and more. For example, a missionary to South America was asked to speak at a mission conference in Mexico. While there, he told how he really liked a local fruit. He told them how he liked to look at it, how he liked to smell it, how he liked to feel and fondle it, and how he liked to taste it. Unfortunately, he did not know that the name of the fruit was used, in Mexico, as slang for a street whore. Think about what the people actually heard, as opposed to what he meant, and we will move on.
4. Next, these puffed-up self-proclaimed ‘experts’ claim to use documents which are ‘originals’. But, the true “word of God” is God’s “book of the law”. Ask any honest lawyer if there can be more than one ‘original’ of any legal documents. Then, ask him if a copy written in the same language qualifies as an ‘original’ legal document. Try handwriting a copy of a car title and getting the DMV to accept it as an ‘original’ title. The claims about ‘originals’ is totally invalid and a deliberate attempt to deceive. Whether the people realize it or not, they are representing “doctrines of devils” (**1Timothy 4:1**) with these claims.
5. Next, when the KJV-1611 was interpreted, the scholars first set aside the three obviously devil-inspired manuscripts then they combined all of the remaining manuscripts to have a common basis, which was called the “Textus Receptus”. Reportedly, the other manuscripts agreed with each other by 92%. However, each manuscript, reportedly, agreed with the “Textus Receptus” by 98%. There were different errors which were obvious copy errors; which were only in one or two manuscripts each and very few errors which were in several manuscripts. Once obvious copy errors were ignored, all of the manuscripts agreed almost perfectly with the KJV-1611.
6. Of the three manuscripts discarded, one is held in the Vatican and only selected priests are allowed to see it. Thus, we only have the word from a religion known to lie about what the Bible truly says. The second manuscript is reported to have all spaces and punctuation removed from it and the text is, reportedly, all capitalized. Take any document that you want, which has some size to it, and do the same. You will see that such treatment renders the document senseless. Further, it was, reportedly, found with discarded trash in an abandoned cave. The third document comes from Alexandria of Egypt which was the center of worldly knowledge (which the Bible says prevents people from receiving what must be “spiritually discerned” [**1Corinthians 2:14**]). That place also is the source of doctrine which denies the Trinity, excuses a life of sin while claiming that Jesus has no choice but to forgive everything to everyone and give everyone a mansion in Heaven, and much more damnable doctrines from devils. These facts should let people understand why these manuscripts were rejected by the interpreters of the 1611 KJV. The doctrine from devils, which are found in these

three, is the source of all so-called 'corrections' being made by men who pervert the "word of God" to write their own 'bible'.

7. With these, and similar facts in mind, it would seem that the "Textus Receptus" would be a good source document. However, the "Textus Receptus" was deemed unimportant, after the interpretation into English, since it was only a work document. Reportedly, there are now six (6) different documents which claim to be the "Textus Receptus". So, when someone claims to trust the "Textus Receptus", you need to ask them which of the six (6) do they trust, how they determined which one was correct, what the errors were in the others and, what made them qualified to make such a decision. Also, ask them how they know that they are using a true "Textus Receptus" and not some perverted copy which someone wrote and claimed was a true "Textus Receptus". What are their qualifications to separate truth from error in the Greek of the Bible, since they cannot have a 'conversational knowledge' of the language?
8. If they claim to have manuscripts, ask them how they obtained them since, reportedly, all are in the possession of historical groups. In addition, ask them which book of the Bible is on their manuscript and what they do for the rest of the New Testament since, reportedly, all of the books of the Bible were not assembled into a single unit until they were gathered for the interpreted Bibles such as the KJV-1611. Finally, ask them how they dealt with the possibility of errors, if they claim to possess some true manuscripts.
9. One last point on this subject. (There are many more points but I will not go into them.) The manuscripts are copies of copies and are not 'original' legal documents. They have not passed the required tests to be considered 'original' legal documents. Therefore, all trust must be put into the agency of preservation. People who trust the KJV-1611 trust it because the God of the "word of God" promised to preserve it and He "cannot lie" (**Titus 1:2**). All others are relying upon men who lie to preserve what they base their faith upon.
10. Once the KJV-1611 was completed, the only changes allowed were a change with the font and making the spelling of words a common spelling. It was closely watched by thousands, if not millions, since the completion. However, you are almost guaranteed that the person is proud (resisted by God), claiming an expertise that they don't actually have, trusting what someone published on the internet and they believed without verification, while also trying to justify rejecting the true "word of God".

Precepts - Basic Doctrines of the Bible

A “precept” is a truth that never changes for any reason. The law of gravity is an example of a precept of this physical world. A precept of the word of God is the single true definition of a Bible word or is a doctrine that is found throughout the Bible which never changes. This section describes some of the basic precepts. The next section deals with groups of applications where we see differences from one occasion to another.

1. God is a Spirit

John 4:24 says: "God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth." Not only is God a Spirit, but God wrote His “word” from a spiritual perspective. Now, if someone spent years looking at the back-side of another person, and then claimed to be an expert on that other person’s face due to the time they spent looking at the back-side, most people would accept that the person, and their claim, were both foolish. Likewise, there are fools who claim that they have spent years looking at God, and God’s “word”, from a physical perspective and that makes them an expert on both. Hopefully, the reader understands how foolish such a claim is. Therefore, the wise person will consider the main perspective which a person uses when they claim to be some type of expert on God, and God’s “word”. The wise person will demand that the spiritual perspective is considered to be most important.

John 3:5-8 says: “Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. Marvel not that I said unto thee, Ye must be born again. The wind bloweth where it listeth, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh, and whither it goeth: so is every one that is born of the Spirit.” Now, there are a couple of important doctrines in this Bible reference.

- The first thing that we read is: “Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God”. This entire chapter of **John 3** is telling us about the difference between the physical and the spiritual. The phrase: “born of water” is symbolic language for physical birth as a woman’s water must break before there is a physical birth.
- The “Spirit”, in the phrase: “born of...the Spirit” is God’s Holy Spirit because the Bible only uses a capitalized word “Spirit” for the person Who is God. Just as a woman will know if she has given physical birth to another person, so also will God’s Holy Spirit know if He has given someone a spiritual birth.
- The “word of God” belongs to the “kingdom of God”. Therefore, if someone has not been “born of...the Spirit”, then they cannot “enter into the kingdom of God”. As a result, they cannot truly understand the “word of God”, which is part of “the kingdom of God”. The best they can do is to give people some acceptable lie in order to deceive other people that they truly are some kind of expert on the “word of God”.
- Next, we read: “That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit”. This goes with 1Corinthians 2:12-14, which says: “Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. Which things also we speak, not in the words which man’s wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual. But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.” If the reader takes the time to truly understand that quote, then they should see that anyone who has not been truly “born of...the Spirit” cannot understand the “word of God” because it must be “spiritually discerned”.
- Our Bible reference continues with: “The wind bloweth where it listeth, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh, and whither it goeth: so is every one that is born of the Spirit”. We cannot directly see the wind but we can see the things which it affects. Likewise, we cannot use our physical senses to determine if someone is truly “born of...the Spirit”, but we can see the God-caused changes in a person who is truly “born of...the Spirit”. Now, yes, there are some people who claim to be truly

“born of...the Spirit” but do not display any God-caused changes. We are not going to get into the argument of if they are truly saved or not. However, we can say without controversy that such a person cannot be any type of expert on the “word of God” and such a person should not be listened to if they claim to be such an expert.

The main point for consideration, at this time and for this Study, is that God wrote His word to reveal Himself to man. Since “God is a Spirit”, His book was written from a spiritual perspective. Therefore, that is the main perspective that we need to take when we try to understand the “word of God”.

2. In God’s Image

- God made man in His own image (**Genesis 1:26-27; Genesis 9:6; 1Corinthians 11:7; 2Corinthians 4:4; Colossians 1:15**). If someone uses a camera to take a picture of you, that picture is an “image”. It captures the outer form with no, or very little, consideration of the inner person. Thus, when we look at men and what is true about all men, we can understand the image of God but cannot truly understand the inner parts of God such as God’s character and God’s ways.
- For example, our Bible tells us that God has revealed Himself to man as three distinct persons, which we call as Trinity. Now, imagine a worm trying to understand people and their thinking in things like Calculus. The worm probably has a better chance of understanding us than we have of completely understanding God. Even if you found a worm in the shape of a man, that worm would still have the same problems of understanding man. Likewise, man has the same difficulty understanding God.
- There are two basic sources of all doctrine which claims to come from the Bible. One source is the church in Antioch of Syria, which sent Paul out as their missionary, and Alexandria of Egypt which was the center of worldly learning at the time of the early church age. Antioch of Syria gives us the doctrine of the Trinity. Alexandria of Egypt denied the doctrine of the Trinity and had all of the people claiming to be Christians turn to Islam when Mohammed came around. That source of doctrinal error teaches things like ‘all saved have Christ in them’ where the Bible actually teaches that ‘all saved have the “Holy Spirit” in them and they must maintain their ongoing personal relationship to Christ in order to have Christ in them’. The first is based upon a denial of the doctrine of the Trinity and the second is based upon the recognition of the doctrine of the Trinity.
- The Bible teaches that man has three distinct parts which give us the image of God. These are our spirit, our body and our soul. Denial of the doctrine of the Trinity also necessitates the denial of these three distinct parts of man. The ‘theory of Evolution’ also depends upon this denial since it rejects the existence of our spirit and tries to claim that the soul is part of the body. It also denies ongoing existence after death in order to deny judgment after physical death.
- Another result of denying the doctrine of the Trinity is that men claim that God is nothing more than a man and then claim that they have more power and authority than God by changing the word of God and demanding that people accept their perversion which they label as a bible. Once more we have a simple foundational test. Let them rise from the dead by their own power, like Jesus Christ did. If they don’t have power over death then they are liars to claim that they have more power and authority than God has. As a result, they also do not have the power and authority to change God’s word. However, Satan has his ministers lying and claiming to have this power and authority.
- Moving on, we are told that the three parts of man are actually the image of the three revealed forms of God. Man’s spirit is an image of God the Father, who is a Spirit (**John 4:24**). God the Son “was made flesh, and dwelt among us” (**John 1:14**). Our body is an image of Him and He, in the Gospels, shows us how to live in this flesh using the power of the Holy “Ghost”. (Please see ljc16121kfv.com for the studies which provides the Bible references to this doctrine.) God the “Holy Spirit” indwells the believer and deals with the parts of our heart /soul, which are the way we think, the way we make our decisions of will, and the way that we react emotionally to the circumstances of life. (The Biblical definition of our “heart” is the short-term version of these three things and the Biblical definition of our “soul” is the long-term version of these three things.)

- Thus, we see that the three major parts of man are images of the three persons in the Trinity and that denial of the doctrine of the Trinity is a denial of the composition of man. We see this denial in many books of fiction. Science Fiction has many books with the idea of creating a new body from different methods including making a man-shaped machine with a computer brain where, somehow, they transfer the brain of a person to this new body and, thereby, avoid death. However, the real basis of all people is not our soul (thinking, will, emotions) but our spirit which resides in the spiritual reality and which they deny the existence of. Therefore, their claims are like a person claiming that if they make a new light bulb, it will give off light without being attached to a source of electricity. A body can no more live without a spirit than a light bulb can give light without a source of electricity.
- Other fiction books recognize the existence of other realities, besides this physical reality, and assume that man will control any reality that he goes into. Such a belief is an obvious denial of the “lake of fire” (**Revelation 19:20; 20:10, 14-15**). Other fiction books imagine men controlling the powers of the spiritual reality and doing ‘magic’. And while I could go on, the reader should understand that sinful men dream up many ways of denying the truth. Further, many people devote their lives to these fantasies as a means of denying Bible truth and dealing with the truth of their own judgment by God after their death, neither of which they can truly avoid.

3. The Truth About the Physical Reality

2Corinthians 4:18 says: “While we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen: for the things which are seen *are* temporal; but the things which are not seen *are* eternal.” This verse is only part of a sentence and the subject of the sentence is different from the point of this section. Yet, this verse contains a truth which was so fundamental in the thinking of people that Paul did not see the need to expound upon it and to make it clear in the thinking of believers. As a result, main-stream thinking has denied this truth for so long and so successfully that most people don’t know it and believe the replacement lie instead. Yet, even with that success, there has been a very popular movie based upon this truth and an even earlier trilogy of movies based upon this truth. Both were highly popular because God has built into man the ability to recognize certain fundamental truths.

It should be obvious that everything in this physical reality came from outside of the physical reality. Everyone should recognize that our physical reality has four dimensions with time being the fourth dimension. The first three dimensions (height, width, and depth) can be argued to go in both directions (up and down, etc) without limit while the fourth dimension, time, only goes forward. Thus, it is different from the other dimensions. In addition, there are other implications about this physical reality having a starting point in time, but we will skip those for now.

While mainstream thinking has denied a certain truth for many years, changes in technology make it easier for current generations to understand this fundamental truth about our physical reality. Our Bible reference says: “While we look ... at the things which are seen”. These are things in our physical reality. Our Bible reference continues with “**for the things which are seen *are* temporal**”. That is: they exist within the fourth dimension of the physical reality which is called time. Then, our Bible reference continues with “but the things which are not seen *are* eternal”. Thus, it is referencing “things” which are not part of this physical reality which is “temporal” (limited by time). Therefore, our reference is speaking about things which are outside of the physical reality and the context of our reference makes it clear that the reference is speaking about “things” in the spiritual reality which the physical reality was made from.

As a side note: one of the things which the God-deniers have problems with is the fact that things in the spiritual reality, which are outside of the physical reality, do not have a limit of time. Their one argument is: When did God start / Where did God come from? However, these questions assume that God is limited to this physical reality and, therefore, must have a time limit.

Returning to our main thought, the physical reality is a sub-set of the spiritual reality. In addition, the relationship between the two realities can be best understood by thinking about a multiple-player game on a computing device. The computing devices, and the game, are part of this physical reality but not all of it. A player is attached to the game when they join it and they are detached from the game when they quit it. Within the game, the player is represented by an ‘avatar’ while they are attached to the game. Likewise, as explained in the next section, we each have a spirit which is attached to our body at birth and is detached at death. Our body is our ‘avatar’ in this physical reality. The movies called ‘Avatar’ and ‘Matrix’ were so popular because they dealt with this truth. The God-deniers try to deny that anything exists outside of the physical reality in spite of the many evidences, some of which have already been presented in this book, which prove that the physical reality cannot be all that exists.

Our Bible reference tells us that true Bible students and believers do not just “look at the things which are seen” (the physical reality) but they also consider (“look at”) the things of the spiritual reality which is outside of the physical reality and encompasses the physical reality. Our chapter also tells us “the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not” (**2Corinthians 4:4**) and their blinded mind refuses to consider the truth of the spiritual reality and the true relationship between it and the physical reality.

The basic truth is that our spirit, which is in the spiritual reality, is attached to our body, which is our ‘avatar’ in this physical reality at birth. Our spirit is detached at death and this is just like someone joining and quitting a multiple-player video game with the physical reality being the virtual reality (“temporal”) that we are

attached to for only a short time. All of this life is a test to determine our position in the eternal spiritual reality. We will be in Heaven or in the “lake of fire” (**Revelation 19:20; 20:10, 14-15**) and our position in each is determined by what we do in this physical reality that is related to the spiritual reality and our obedience to the commandments of God which are related to the spiritual reality.

We looked at how this physical reality was created from the spiritual reality. But we need a little more understanding of basic truths in order to better understand the differences between the two realities.

Everything that we claim to know is based upon fact or faith. If it is truly based upon fact, then that fact can be verified independent from the person who told the fact to you. Further, our understanding of how these facts work in the physical reality is based upon rules that never change for any reason such as the Scientific Method. These rules, such as the Scientific Method, are the precepts of this physical reality. Now, if what is claimed to be true cannot be verified independent of the person who told the thing to you, or if it cannot be proven using the precepts, such as the Scientific Method, then it is based upon faith. And, anything that is based upon faith is a religion.

The first rule of the Scientific Method is that all true scientific rules must be reproducible. For example, if you had a class in physics then you should have been shown how to reproduce the evidence of the law of gravity.

About the time of WW-II, a case went to the U.S. Supreme Court. In that case, the U.S. Supreme Court ruled that Humanism is a religion and not true science as the proponents claim. The theories of ‘Big Bang’ and ‘Evolution’ are religious tenants of Humanism. Neither is true science and never can be true science because neither can be reproduced. People make excuses on why they cannot be reproduced but both of these must be accepted by faith, which makes them part of a religion. And, since that religion claims to be science, it is a lying religion. Only a fool will continue to believe a lie after being given undisputable evidence that it is a lie. All who continue to accept ‘Big Bang’ and ‘Evolution’ are proving themselves to be a fool.

For example, I blew up things when I was young. Explosions do not put things in an orderly result like the pews in a church are lined up. Further, the laws of math, once you get past Calculus, prove that a ‘Big Bang’ can never create an orderly reality where we have rules like gravity and Math. Now, people might not understand all of that but they can ask where the stuff came from that blew up and who lit the match to start the explosion. The undeniable truth is that everything in this physical reality came from another reality. People who claim ‘Big Bang’ also agree with this. They only deny the existence of a Creator and deny that the existence of order in creation demand an intelligence controlling creation in order to impose that order.

Next, ‘Evolution’ tries to make you think about one ‘missing link’ between apes and man. They have produced eight (8) claims of the missing link, and all of those claims have been proven to be a fraud. However, instead of arguing about that so-called link, have them explain why a snake and a bird can’t get together, without one eating the other, and produce a dragon. Also, where is the woman who was made pregnant by a fish and produces the mermaid? But the big missing link is spontaneous life. How long do you have to give inert rocks to exist before they produce life? It takes life to beget life and yet ‘Evolution’ claims that life came from a bunch of dead rocks.

I know I haven’t explained all of the details here, but, hopefully, I’ve showed the foolishness of believing in ‘Big Bang’ and in ‘Evolution’. They are the only explanations, to the existence of our physical reality, other than accepting the existence of God. People hold onto these lies because they want to deny that God will judge them after death. However, denying a truth does not make it go away. And, no matter how much we want to deny death and the judgment of our life by God, our denial does not make them go away.

One thing to keep in mind is that we already covered how this physical reality is measured by time but the spiritual reality is eternal, which means it is not measured by time. One of the main objections of the Humanists is that God could not have created everything in seven physical days if God was limited by time like our physical reality is limited by time. However, we also discussed how this physical reality is like a

video game. Your body is your avatar in this virtual reality. You join this reality at conception and leave it at death. And, it does not take a creator of a video game millions of years to load the game into the computer. Likewise, it did not take God more than six (6) days to create this physical reality from the spiritual reality.

In addition to that truth, we have the truth that God created the physical reality from the spiritual reality, which makes the physical reality a part of the spiritual reality. This means that beings in the spiritual reality can, and do, affect the physical reality in ways which are outside of the rules for the physical reality. Since they are outside of the physical reality, they are not limited by the rules of the physical reality. Therefore, their actions are called miracles. And, since devils are spiritual beings, they can do miracles so long as God does not stop them.

People try to deny that miracles happen but denial does not change truth. For example, people claim that death is the end of existence, and, therefore, there cannot be a judgment by God. However, they cannot have any evidence to back their claim. If their claim was true then they could not come back from the dead to tell us their claim. Thus, their claim to tell a proven truth is a lie because their claim is impossible to prove. They want you to believe, by faith, in a claim which can be proven to be a lie. However, there have been uncounted numbers of people who have died and returned to say that physical death is not the end of existence. Those people have been from all societies in all parts of the world and in all time periods. Therefore, physical death is not an end to existence. In addition, existence after death has so many witnesses that only fools deny that truth. And, all religions which tell us about existence after death also tell us about a judgment with some people going to Hell and some going to Heaven. The details claimed by different religions differ, but judgment and punishment are universal truths. Therefore, people who fail to prepare for their own personal judgment are fools.

We are given the means of determining our eternal destiny after death. However, we must use the methods provided. Using the wrong method will not affect anything. Most religions tell you how to live in this world but they don't tell you how obeying their rules will affect your eternal destiny. In addition, they tell you to have faith in the word of the man who is also going to die. However, God put His word in writing so that we can verify what someone claims as a commandment from God. Yes, there are other so-called 'holy books', but they do not have evidence that they truly came from the most powerful being in existence. God's word has hundreds of detail prophecies which have been fulfilled exactly as God had His prophets write down. In addition, God gave His enemies hundreds of years to try and stop Him. For example, the prophecies that Jesus would be born as a descendent of King David and that he would be born in Bethlehem were made hundreds of years before His birth. Yet, with all of that time, the enemies of God could not affect the fulfillment of the prophecy exactly as God had it written.

We have the prophecies of Nostradamus, which I have read and most people have not read. They are so general in wording that they can be fulfilled many different ways. They are not specific such as saying that Jesus would be born in Bethlehem. Therefore, they are not in the same class as the prophecies of the Bible and cannot compete with God's true prophecies.

Supposedly, the Koran has exactly one prophecy, which is that the prophet will return. That makes Arnold Schwarzenegger, in the science fiction movie, just as great of a prophet. In addition, the Koran is reported to have been written several generations after the prophet died. Therefore, it is not from the prophet nor is it from eyewitnesses to the prophet and is, in fact, a lie when it claims to be from the prophet.

The Jews had the true word of God, but chose to believe religious liars and crucify their Messiah. Therefore, they are still looking for the promise of God which they already received and rejected. People who believe their religion will also face the judgment of God after rejecting His word and, effectively, calling God a liar by their life of rejection.

All other religions have no evidence that their beliefs are anything more than the fancy rules created by men. Obeying their rules can not affect your judgment by God after death.

Many religions tell you that if you obey their rules then God has no choice but to grant you a mansion in His personal home called Heaven and give you an eternity of bliss. For example, one person told me that they said the magic prayer of salvation. Now they can live a life of sin and fighting against God. Further, they believed that Jesus has no choice but to pay for all of their sins and give them a mansion. Trusting that you said a religious prayer is not the same thing as accepting an ongoing personal relationship with Jesus as your personal Lord and believing that He will do what is required to get you to Heaven. **Matthew 7:21-23** says: "Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven. Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works? And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity." In the Bible, the true definition of the word "knew" includes a personal intimate knowledge. In this reference, Jesus is saying that people who trusted in the power of religion will be sent to Hell because they never had an ongoing personal relationship with Jesus.

All false religions claim that doing a religious act, in this physical reality, forces God to save you in the spiritual reality. However, the truth is that the physical reality is a sub-set of the spiritual reality. That means that things done within the physical reality cannot force a change in the spiritual reality. Further, it means that things changed in the spiritual reality can change the physical reality. For example, a large storm can affect what happens within a building that is within the storm, such as destroying the building. However, someone in the building doing a rain dance cannot force the storm to go away. Likewise, the spiritual can affect the physical. However, the only way that physical being can affect the spiritual is if they get God to do it for them. God controls the spiritual reality and the physical reality. Therefore, our only hope is in the being who is God and not in some religious way to force God to do our will.

In simple language, all religious doctrine which claims that things done physically will force a change in the spiritual reality, are lies. Our only true hope is in the person of God and His promises to do certain things if we trust and obey Him. God put His word in writing so that we can verify what someone tells us that God told us to do. When we obey the word of God, in faith, we prove that we believe the promise of God even though we cannot know when and how God will keep His promise. Our Biblical example is Abraham who told people that He and Sarah would have a baby even when Sarah was too old to get pregnant. Thus, our act of faith does not force God to act but it gives God the legal evidence that we acted in our own free will when Satan claims that God took away our free will to force His promise on us.

A simple example of this truth is the promise of: "Vengeance *is* mine; I will repay, saith the Lord" (**Romans 12:19; R Romans 13:4; Deuteronomy 32:35,43; Psalms 94:1-3; Nahum 1:2-3; Hebrews 10:30**). We are to not get vengeance and we are not to tell God when, nor how, He is to get vengeance for us. We are to believe that God can "repay" by giving us blessings or by hurting the other person or by doing any combination of the two. In addition, God can "repay" in this reality or in eternity or by doing any combination of the two. The person who claims to turn something over to God and then tries to dictate these things to God has not really turned it over to God.

The conclusion of this precept is that we cannot personally do anything to force what eternal results we receive. We must trust God, and the promises of God found in the word of God, in order to affect our eternal results which, we will receive after our physical death.

4. Hypocrisy and False Doctrines

John 8:44 says: “Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.” It should be of no surprise to anyone that the world is full of liars and that the worst liars are religious liars. As bad as mass murders and others are, they only affect this physical life, which is temporary. Religious liars send souls to the “lake of fire” for eternity.

The most believable lie is an almost complete truth and the most believable of those lies only leave out a little truth or even present a small part of the truth in a perverted way. We see this in the temptation of Jesus (**Matthew 4:1-11; Mark 1:12-13 and Luke 4:1-13**) where Satan quoted scripture but perverted it by first leaving out a part.

In **Matthew 16:5-12; Mark 8:14-21 and Luke 12:1-12**, we read about Jesus warning His disciples against the doctrine of the Pharisees and of the Sadducees, which was religious hypocrisy. This is explained in the note for **Mark 8:17** in the [Lord Jesus Christ Study on LJC1611KJV.com](http://LJC1611KJV.com). While the same lesson is taught in each of these Bible references, the lesson was taught at different times and in different circumstances. Those are the many applications of the basic true doctrine. It should also be obvious that this lesson is a “precept” that never changes but has multiple applications. Therefore, it should be obvious that Jesus taught certain lessons more than once. He taught “precepts” under different circumstances so that we would know what doctrines never change and which applications change with the circumstances.

It is critical to understand the difference between these two types of Bible lessons. Much doctrinal error is due to people failing to distinguish between a “precept” and an application. When Jesus was arguing with the Pharisees about law and the requirement of legal proof, He said: “It is also written in your law, that the testimony of two men is true.” (**John 8:17**). Therefore, we see that Jesus relied on this rule to separate “precepts”, which are part of God’s Law, from applications and from man-made religious doctrines.

Any true “precept” will be said literally at least twice in the “word of God”. If it is said only once or said indirectly, it is an application which applies in the circumstances where it is found in the “word of God”. If it is only what someone tells you that the Bible says, or it is what someone tells you is the interpretation of the Bible but cannot be found in what the Bible literally says, then it is a religious doctrine and may very well be error.

Now, with this basic understanding of how to separate true Biblical “precepts” from doctrinal error, we need to realize that hypocrites are religious liars and that their doctrines should always be avoided and to be treated as error. Yes, much of what they say is true - even the majority will be true. But only a fool believes that he will always be able to separate the truth from the doctrinal error. God tells us that when we know that someone is a religious liar, stop listening to them and get far away from them. Some of their lies will seem quite reasonable and very appealing to our flesh and even be supported by our society. But Jesus warns us: “Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide *is* the gate, and broad *is* the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat: Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.” (**Matthew 7:13-14**). Part of the “narrow way” is to listen only to people who always point you to what the “word of God” tells you to do.

Now, the details of this truth are dealt with in a later book. But anyone who makes excuses for sins of the flesh, done by anyone, is a hypocrite and should be treated as a liar from Satan. The same is true for anyone who claims that their religious practices replace our ongoing personal intimate relationship with Jesus wherein He cleanses us from sin. The same is true for anyone who refuses to let their religious doctrine be corrected by what the “word of God” says literally, and this is especially true when the doctrine is said literally two or more times.

5. In the Beginning

Our Bible starts with: "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth." (**Genesis 1:1**). Probably more than any other book in the Bible, **Genesis** is attacked by God deniers. They may give themselves fancy titles like 'Agnostic', 'Liberal Theologian' or one of the many other titles they may dream up. However, at the bottom of all of their fancy arguments they deny the existence of God and / or claim that if God exists then God does not have the power and authority that the Bible claims that the true God has. In pretty much every case they deny some, or all, of the doctrine found in **Genesis**. In addition to those people, many people who think that they are Bible believers have actually accepted some of the doctrines which come from these God deniers. Since the only true purpose for studying the word of God is to find out about God; approaching the Bible from a mind-set which accepts doctrine (teaching) from God deniers is going to cause us to approach the truth with a closed mind.

In **Mark 4:9** we read: "And he (Jesus) said unto them, He that hath ears to hear, let him hear." (The note for that verse, in the Book Study on the Gospel of Mark on lhc1611kiv.com, provides a more detailed explanation.) The true saying goes: 'There is none so deaf as he who will not hear. There is none so blind as he who will not see.' We see God warn us about this attitude several places in the Bible such as:

The phrase: "ears to hear" is found in: **Deuteronomy 29:4; Ezekiel 12:2; Matthew 11:15; Matthew 13:9; Matthew 13:43; Mark 4:9; Mark 4:23; Mark 7:16; Luke 8:8 and Luke 14:35**. We find the phrase "hath an ear" in: **Revelation 2:7; Revelation 2:11; Revelation 2:17; Revelation 2:29; Revelation 3:6; Revelation 3:13 and Revelation 3:22**. And, **Revelation 13:9** uses the phrase "have an ear".

We find the exact phrase "let him hear" in: **Jeremiah 20:16; Ezekiel 3:27; Matthew 11:15; Matthew 13:9; Matthew 13:43; Mark 4:9; Mark 4:23; Mark 7:16; Luke 8:8; Luke 14:35; Revelation 2:7; Revelation 2:11; Revelation 2:17; Revelation 2:29; Revelation 3:6; Revelation 3:13; Revelation 3:22 and Revelation 13:9**.

The fool says: 'My mind's made up. Don't confuse me with the facts'. Since time is a dimension of this physical reality, if we go back in time there must be a start of the physical reality. The people, who claim that our physical reality started with a 'Big Bang', are partially right. This physical reality must have been created from another reality that is outside of the physical and does not have the limitation of time. In addition, the only way that we can have laws that are always true, like the law of gravity and the laws of math, is if this physical reality was created by an ordered process, which requires an intelligence controlling the process. Thus, we have the proof of the existence of God. That is: the existence of this physical reality proves that there must be an intelligent being who is powerful enough to create the physical reality and powerful enough to force all opposing beings into accept His design regardless of what they wanted. For example, mermaids and griffins are examples of things which other beings would have created but were prevented from creating.

In addition to those truths, everywhere men recognize that there must be a God. This is evident by the God consciousness that we are all born with and by the fact that all societies everywhere on Earth and at all times recognized the existence of a god and worshiped such a being. The people who deny the existence of a Creator are willfully ignoring the evidence that all men can see if they are willing to open their minds.

If people can get you to deny creation, then they can get you to doubt, and often deny, other truths which are in the Bible. Now, obviously, this is not the time or place to deal with this subject in detail but I will give a very quick set of answers which the God deniers cannot answer.

First, we need to understand the way that we think and claim that something is what we believe to be true. Everything that we claim to know is based upon fact or faith. If it is truly based upon fact, then that fact can be verified independent from the person who told the fact to you. Further, our understanding of how these facts work in the physical reality is based upon rules that never change for any reason such as the Scientific Method. These rules, such as the Scientific Method, are the precepts of this physical reality. Now, if what is claimed to be true cannot be verified independent of the person who told the thing to you, or if it cannot be

proven using the precepts, such as the Scientific Method, then it is based upon faith. And, anything that is based upon faith is a religion. God deniers can deny the existence of God but they cannot explain our existence with facts and the scientific method.

Consider the fact that we exist. We are in this physical reality until our death. So, the first question is: 'Where did everything come from and how did it get here if you deny the God of the Bible and the account of creation found in the Bible?' Now there is a lying religion, which claims to be science, and gives impossible explanations for these questions. People deliberately turn off their brains and willfully accept foolishness believing that their denial will set aside the consequences of their denial. Invite such people to prove the power of their denial by diving off a 30-story building in their birthday suit, to prove that they are only relying on their own power of denial, and with nothing below them before the sudden stop at ground level. If their denial cannot set aside the law of gravity, then it cannot set aside death and the warnings of judgment following death.

The first thing to consider is that the scientific community still call 'Big Bang' and 'Evolution' theories. That means that all of the true experts in the world tell us that these claims have not fulfilled the requirements to be proven to be scientific laws in spite of the credentials of liars who claim that they are proven scientific laws. When such people claim to be true scientists while also claiming something that they know is not true, they prove themselves to be liars.

The first rule of the Scientific Method is that all true scientific rules must be reproducible. For example, if you had a class in physics then you should have been shown how to reproduce the evidence of the law of gravity.

About the time of WWII, a case went to the U.S. Supreme Court. In that case, the U.S. Supreme Court ruled that Humanism is a religion and not true science as the proponents claim. The theories of 'Big Bang' and 'Evolution' are religious tenants of Humanism. Neither is true science and never can be true science because neither can be reproduced. People make excuses for why these claims cannot be reproduced but both of these must be accepted by faith, which makes them part of a religion. And, since that religion claims to be science, it is a lying religion. Only a fool will continue to believe a lie after being given undisputable evidence that it is a lie. All who continue to accept 'Big Bang' and 'Evolution' are proving themselves to be a fool.

Now, the 'Big Bang' theory of creation has been pretty much discredited, but some people still believe it and others claim that they can deny creation even while having no other explanation of how we got here. The math used to prove all true laws of the universe, such as gravity, tells us that it is impossible to get an ordered result, such as this physical reality, from a random process such as the 'Big Bang' theory. The fact that we have laws that are always true and never changing, such as the law of gravity, prove that this physical reality is ordered. In simpler terms, the most fundamental law of all science is the requirement of replication. So, tell those people to start blowing things up until they find a way for all of the results of the explosion to be lined up like church pews. Until they can do that, they do not have anything that is scientific which will support the lie called the 'Big Bang Theory'. All they only have the tenant of a lying religion which claims to be science but requires people to accept their lies as scientific fact based upon faith in the speaker when faith is always part of a religion.

One thing which they should accept is that all physical things, in this physical reality, changes with time and, therefore, must have had a beginning. This means that nothing existed before the beginning of this physical reality, and, as a result, everything in the physical reality must have come from outside of the physical reality. Ask them upon what basis do they claim to be an authority who is able to speak on what happens outside of the physical reality. In other words, where is their authority which is outside of this physical reality and was around to witness the creation of this physical reality. This requirement is a special problem for people who claim that there are no spirits and no God. If they cannot produce any reliable evidence for claiming such authority, then they have no true basis for their claims. They are a prideful liar who demands that others accept their lies as truth. If they ask you to produce the same, you can show them the word of

God and the many evidences within it which prove that the true author wrote detailed prophecy and was powerful enough to make it happen exactly as prophesied in spite of all opposition.

Next, 'Evolution' tries to make you think about one 'missing link' between apes and man. They have produced eight (8) claims of the missing link, and all of those claims have been proven to be a fraud. However, instead of arguing about that so-called link, have them explain why a snake and a bird can't get together, without one eating the other, and produce a dragon. Also, where is the woman who was made pregnant by a fish and produces the mermaid? But the big missing link is spontaneous life. How long do you have to give inert rocks to exist before they produce life? It takes life to beget life and yet 'Evolution' claims that life came from a bunch of dead rocks.

I know I haven't explained all of the details here, but, hopefully, I've showed the foolishness of believing in 'Big Bang' and in 'Evolution'. They are the only explanations to the existence of our physical reality other than creation. People hold onto these lies because they want to deny that God will judge them after death. However, denying a truth does not make it go away. And, no matter how much we want to deny death and the judgment of our life by God, our denial does not make them go away.

One thing to keep in mind is that we already covered how this physical reality is measured by time but the spiritual reality is eternal, which means it is not measured by time. One of the main objections of the Humanists is that God could not have created everything in seven physical days if God was limited by time like our physical reality is limited by time. However, the spiritual reality is not limited by time. In addition, we also discussed how this physical reality is like a video game. Your body is your avatar in this virtual reality and you join this reality at conception and leave it at death. Also, it does not take a creator of a video game millions of years to load the game into the computer. Likewise, it did not take God more than six (6) days to load this physical reality from the spiritual reality.

In addition to that truth, we have the truth that God created the physical reality from the spiritual reality, which makes the physical reality a part of the spiritual reality. This means that beings in the spiritual reality can, and do, affect the physical reality in ways which are outside of the rules for the physical reality. Since they are outside of the physical reality, they are not limited by the rules of the physical reality. Therefore, their actions are called miracles. And, since devils are spiritual beings, they can do miracles so long as God does not stop them.

People try to deny that miracles happen but denial does not change truth. For example, people claim that death is the end of existence, and, therefore, there cannot be a judgment by God. However, they cannot have any evidence to back their claim. If their claim was true then they could not come back from the dead to tell us their claim. Thus, their claim is a lie that they want you to believe by faith in a liar. However, there have been uncounted numbers of people who have died and returned to say that physical death is not the end of existence. Those people have been from all societies in all parts of the world and in all time periods. Therefore, death is an absolute law of this physical reality. In addition, existence after death has so many witnesses that only fools deny that truth. And, all religions which tell us about existence after death also tell us about a judgment with some people going to Hell and some going to Heaven. The details claimed by different religions differ, but judgment and punishment are universal truths. Therefore, people who fail to prepare for their own personal judgment are fools.

Next, one thing to be careful about is doctrine from 'good godly Bible believing fundamental Baptist preachers' who preach a doctrine compromised by these lies. For example, such preachers claim: 'God stood on nothing and created this world out of nothing'. That is nice sounding religion which is not Bible. The Bible tells us that: "God *is* a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship *him* in spirit and in truth." (**John 4:24**). It also tells us that in His spiritual home, called Heaven, God has a "throne" (**Psalms 45:6; Psalms 47:7, Matthew 5:34, Matthew 23:22, Hebrews 1:8, Revelation 4:5; Re 5:6; Revelation 7:10-11,15,17; Revelation 12:5; Revelation 14:5; Revelation 19:4-5; Revelation 22:1,3**). God has a "street of gold" (**Revelation 22:21**). God has a "sea of glass" (**Revelation 4:6**) and much more in His spiritual reality. So, God sat on His "throne" or walked on His "street of gold" or stood by His "sea of glass" or did whatever He

chose to do while He made this physical reality from the spiritual reality. Now, for many people, this distinction will not be important. However, it is quite important if you want to answer some doctrinal errors which are popular.

By God creating the physical reality from the spiritual reality, the physical reality becomes a mathematical subset of the spiritual reality. This means that beings in the spiritual reality can, and do, affect the physical reality in ways which are outside of the rules for the physical reality. Such actions are called miracles and devils who are spiritual beings, can do miracles so long as God does not stop them.

The next thing is critically important. It means that things done within the physical reality cannot force a change in the spiritual reality. However, something can be changed is in the spiritual reality and that change is outside of the limits of the physical reality. In simple language, all religious doctrine which claims that things done physically, such as baptism by immersion, cannot force a change in the spiritual reality. That is: a physical religious act cannot force God to spiritually save someone. However, when we do what the word of God tells us to do, in order to receive a promise of God, we are not forcing God to do anything but are trusting God to keep His word. When we obey in faith, we give God the legal evidence that He needs in order to shut the mouth of Satan. Satan accuses God of acting like Satan and taking away our free will. (All sin is addictive and takes away our free will.) For example, Satan has men claiming that God 'forces His grace on us against our free will'. Every promise of God, in the Bible, is worded so that we know what we will receive but God still chooses when and how He will keep His promise. Thus, we must believe the promise and obey the Bible even though we do not know when and how God will keep His promise. That is where the faith comes in and our example is Abraham who is still waiting for some of the promises and who told people that He and Sarah would have a baby even when Sarah was too old. Thus, our act of faith does not force God to act but it gives God the legal evidence that we acted in our own free will when Satan claims that God took away our free will to force His promise on us.

Please reread the prior paragraph and meditate on it. There are many lies out there about faith and the results of faith and a student of the word of God needs to clearly understand this truth. Your act of faith does not force God to keep His promise nor does it allow you to dictate to God when and how He must keep His promise.

So, we started out with creation and dealt, in a general way, with the God-deniers as they relate to creation. Then, we dealt with the fact that this physical reality is a subset of the spiritual realist and is created from the spiritual reality. We also, lightly, touched on one of the consequences of this truth and how it affects our faith. Now we will lightly deal with 'Evolution', which is the second main tenant of the lying religion which claims to be science. By dealing with these two lies, it is hoped that the reader learns, and understands, that their attitude about foundational beliefs has a profound effect upon their understanding of the word of God.

When we deal with 'Evolution', the main thing to realize is that the arguments about it have been going on since the time of Darwin and will continue to go on, probably, until the return of our Lord. This is because the proponents have learned how to suck people into arguing about minor points, which can never be proved, and ignoring the main points which prove this thing to be an obvious lie. Now, you can spend your entire life and ministry dealing with the minor points of this argument, and some people do. They can take pride in 'standing for the Lord', but it prevents them from doing things which God puts at a higher priority, such as taking the Gospel to people who have never heard it.

One of the problems with spending time listening to these arguments is that you can get sucked into them and, like Schofield, try to change the word of God to accommodate the lie. That is what he did with his 'gap theory'. The other option is to consider the obvious major lie and ignore the rest of the distraction until they answer the major lie, which they cannot do.

People have argued about 'the missing link' like it is the only 'missing link' in their 'chain of evolution'. However, there are supposedly millions of 'missing links' and they all have to be found in order to prove

their theory. (Their lie will never be proven since it is scientifically and mathematically impossible.) In addition, every claim of finding 'the missing link', between man and apes, has been proven to be a fraud. And while this and all related arguments are interesting, they distract from the foundational problem, which is called 'spontaneous life'. My suggestion is to ignore all of this argument until someone claims to have, properly, solved the problem of 'spontaneous life'. Instead, concentrate on giving out the Gospel.

If you don't know about 'spontaneous life', it is simple. The 'theory of Evolution' picks up where 'Big Bang Theory' ends. Both are a denial of God. Both require that everything in this physical existence come into being without the control and even without any input by a living being. (If they admit to a living being involved then they have to explain their denial of intelligence which, when combined with the obvious power involved, results in an admittance of the existence of God.)

Life begets similar life and no life exists anywhere which did not come from another life. In order for the 'theory of Evolution' to work, we must have inert (non-moving) chemicals in an environment where there is no life of any type to interfere and those inert (non-moving) chemicals must produce a form of life which moves of its own accord. Good luck waiting for that to happen.

All logical arguments are like buildings. One argument/story is built upon the prior. When the plans destroyed a floor of the World Trade Center, it did not matter how fancy the materials and construction methods of the floors above were. They fell when their foundation was removed. Likewise, it does not matter how fancy the arguments for 'the theory of Evolution' are if their foundation of 'spontaneous life' is not sustained. Therefore, the true Bible student can ignore all pother arguments about 'the theory of Evolution' until someone proves how 'spontaneous life' happens.

6. Death and Salvation

Genesis 2:17 says: “But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.”

- A “tree of the knowledge” is an organized set of knowledge. Thus, all classes which teach Math is the ‘tree of knowledge of Math’. Also, religion claims to be “the tree of the knowledge of good and evil” but this “knowledge” truly comes from God (**Isaiah 28:9**). However, almost all religions claim that they give equal knowledge, or greater “knowledge of good and evil”, than what God gives.
 - **Genesis 3:4-5** says: “And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die: For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.” Here we see that the serpent, speaking for Satan, called God a liar and almost all religions call the God of the Bible a liar.
 - God said that they “shalt surely die”. Religion claims that they died spiritually but did not die physically. Religion says nothing about man’s soul. However, the Bible says that God offers salvation for each of the three parts of man and offers a different salvation for each part. Therefore, each part must have died in order for each part needing salvation.
- Even religion agrees that death is separation. The first death is physical and happens when the soul and spirit are separated from the body and the second death is spiritual and happens when a soul is cast into the “lake of fire” to be separated from God forever.
 - There are fools who claim that physical death is the end of existence. They cannot have any evidence to support their foolishness because if it was true, then no one could come back from death and tell us this truth. However, there have been uncounted numbers of people in all times and in all parts of the world and in all cultures, who have died and come back to testify that death is not the end of existence. I personally have died and been revived twice. Therefore, since we will all die, we need to be prepared for what comes after physical death.
 - All people in all cultures and all times worship some god because the true God built into all men the need to have fellowship with God and the recognition that we will be judged for how we live after we die. **Hebrews 9:27** says: “And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment:” Therefore, we need to prepare for our own personal judgment while we are in this physical life.
- The Bible promises salvation from God for each of our three parts if we obey God’s word. Now, we will get into what God says to do later. However, right now we need to recognize that we only need salvation if we face death. If religious doctrine was correct in claiming that man only died spiritually, when Adam and Eve sinned, then we would not need salvation of our body and of our soul.
 - The main source of error is a wrong definition for the word “death” as it is used in the Bible. Men use the definition which comes from society but we must use the definition from God’s word if we will understand the truth of God’s word. The Bible uses the phrase “unto death” 28 times in the Bible with the word “unto” meaning ‘up to and including’. This is defining a progressive process which continues until the end is reached. Men use a definition for the word “death” which only considers the end while rejecting the ongoing process. However, the true definition of Bible words is what matches every usage in the Bible. Therefore, the true Biblical definition of “death” is not just the final act of separation but also includes the ongoing process of corruption which results in the final act of separation.
 - So, for example, **2Corinthians 2:16** says: “To the one *we are* the savour of death unto death; and to the other the savour of life unto life. And who *is* sufficient for these things?” Now, most people can understand that life is an ongoing process and that growth is increasing the amount of life, which is accomplished by adding life to life. In addition to our Bible reference saying that the message from God is “the savour of life unto life”, it also says that the message from God is “the savour of death unto death”. Thus, the truth is that true Biblical “death” is an ongoing process of corruption with the end, of physical death, when the soul and spirit leave the body. Likewise, the end, of spiritual death, is when the soul and spirit leave God because corruption cannot exist with God.

- Religion recognizes that Adam and Eve died spiritually when they sinned.
 - Religion recognizes that death is separation and that Adam and Eve were separated from God when they sinned. Before their sin, God met them daily in the Garden and visited with them. After their sin, they were put out of the garden and God only dealt with them indirectly.
 - However, while religion claims that they died spiritually, religion also claims that they did not die physically. In addition, religion says nothing about man's soul.
 - Therefore, religion tells us one third truth, one third error, and ignores one third of the truth.
- The truth from the Bible is that physical death is an ongoing process of corruption.
 - Scientists have looked at the design of the body and concluded that it was designed to repair itself and to live forever.
 - However, the reproductive process has corruption at the cell level. This process of corruption continues to spread until it affects all of the cells in our body. We call this process the 'aging process' and no one can honestly deny the existence of aging in all of us.
 - If we do not die from some other cause, we will eventually die from this process of corruption.
 - People who have a terminal illness often accept this truth and declare themselves to be dead even though they are still in their physical body. They accept the truth that we all die eventually even while most people deny this truth.
 - While religion claims that Adam and Eve did not die physically when they sinned, the truth is that they did die in that they started the process of corruption that day. That process of corruption is called the aging process. Yes, the process took almost a thousand years to complete in Adam, but it started that day and that is why each of us is born with this process in us.
- Adam and Eve also had their souls die that day.
 - As already explained, the Bible says that our soul is the way we think, the way we make our decisions of will and the way that we react emotionally to the circumstances of life. (The Biblical definition of our "heart" is the short-term version of these three things and the Biblical definition of our "soul" is the long-term version of these three things.)
 - Out thinking is naturally corrupt, which is why **1Corinthians 2:14** says: "But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned." In addition, **Isaiah 55:8-9** says: "For my thoughts *are* not your thoughts, neither *are* your ways my ways, saith the LORD. For *as* the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts." And we see this truth expressed in other ways within the Bible.
 - God saves our thinking through the process found in **Philippians 2:5**, which says; "Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus:" This process is also told to us in other places of the Bible but it is only available to people who have accepted Jesus as their personal Lord.
 - We also see the evidence of a corrupt will by all of the wars in the world. One person wants everyone to obey their will and another wants the same and they convince many others to murder everyone who disagrees with the leader. And, while many people claim that this is only the result of a few corrupt people, the truth is that all babies fuss when there is nothing wrong with them. They are demanding that mommy do what they want done with no consideration of the consequences of their demands.
 - In addition, we all respond in anger and covetousness and other wrong emotions throughout our life.
 - Our thinking and our emotional responses and our decisions of our will are all based upon prior experiences in life. Thus, our wrong decisions lead to greater errors and, if we are honest, each of us can see and understand the ongoing corrupting processes in our own life.
- With these truths recognized, we can now understand the need of God saving all three parts of us. The Bible also says that God offers full salvation but God saves each part using different processes.
 - **Ephesians 2:6-7** says: "And hath raised *us* up together, and made *us* sit together in heavenly *places* in Christ Jesus: That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in *his* kindness toward us through Christ Jesus." The word "hath" is an 'ongoing verb of existence which started in the

past'. When we accepted Jesus Christ as our personal Lord, and were truly Biblically saved, God immediately moved our spirit into "heavenly *places* in Christ Jesus". No one can take you out of Heaven once your spirit gets there. This is only one of the many Biblical reasons for the doctrine of 'eternal security'. And, the Bible truth is that our spirit is saved immediately when we accept Jesus Christ as our personal Lord.

- **1Corinthians 15:50** says: "Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God; neither doth corruption inherit incorruption." We already covered how our body is completely corrupted by the aging process as well as other sinful things but religious people claim that God will use parts of our existing body to make our new perfect body but that would require "corruption to inherit incorruption" and make this Bible reference a lie. In addition, **1Corinthians 15:53** says: "For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal *must* put on immortality." Now, there is more related doctrine in that section of the Bible but the basic truth is that we must "put off" this corrupted body before we "put on" the new "incorruptible and immortal" body. This will not happen until after we leave this physical reality and are in Heaven.
- **Matthew 1:20-21** says: "But while he thought on these things, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, Joseph, thou son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost. And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name JESUS: for he shall save his people from their sins." In order for Him to "save his people (us) from their (our) sins", Jesus Christ must get us out of doing ongoing sins in our physical life. And He does this by the ongoing process of saving our soul. This process starts when we receive Jesus Christ as our personal Lord and continues until we leave this physical reality. This process makes our character more like the character of Jesus Christ and the more we become like Him, the more we will enjoy Heaven. Thus, it is for our own good that we cooperate with Jesus Christ in this process. **Hebrews 10:39; James 1:21** and **James 5:20** are only a few places where the Bible tells us about the process of "saving of the soul".
- Thus, we see that God saves all three parts of man because all three parts dies when Adam and Eve sinned. We see that we are born with a corrupt soul and a corrupt body which have the process of death in them and that we are born with a dead spirit which is separated from God. In addition, if we die this way, then we will be permanently separated from God in Hell and then in the "lake of fire". Further, we see that we need to do what God tells us to do in order to have God save all three parts of us. Finally, we see that God only does this for people who accept Jesus Christ as their personal Lord in an ongoing personal relationship.

7. Authorities:

Throughout the Gospels we read about the Jewish religious leaders being upset with Jesus because he had evidence from God that He was the messenger from God and He did not agree with their doctrine nor did He bow to their authority. Eventually, they got the people worked up enough that they demanded that Jesus be crucified. It took a while, but eventually they lost their positions, their country, their descendants were scattered and persecuted everywhere they went and more of the judgment of God came upon them.

Next, we have the account of Paul. He answered the people that criticized him more than once but that did not stop their lies. They claimed that Paul did not have credentials and that Paul's disciples should follow them because of their religious credentials. Finally, in **Philippians 3**, Paul writes that he had better credentials than any of his critics but that religious credentials didn't matter when speaking for God while evidence of the power of God did matter. According to the **Book of Acts**, many thousands of Jews were saved and joined the Jerusalem Church.

Then, in **Acts 15:1** we read: "And certain men which came down from Judaea taught the brethren, *and said*, Except ye be circumcised after the manner of Moses, ye cannot be saved." This led to the council of Jerusalem which ended up writing to the Gentile churches "Forasmuch as we have heard, that certain which went out from us have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying, *Ye must* be circumcised, and keep the law: to whom we gave no *such* commandment:" (**Acts 15:24**). At this point, the religious leaders of the Jerusalem Church

did right. However, when we get to **Acts 21**, we see that the saved people in the church, who want to have authority because of their religious credentials, and stirred up the people against Paul and caused “many thousands of Jews there are which believe; and they are all zealous of the law” (**Acts 21:20**). That is, they were “all zealous” of religious traditions which God had done away with but which were kept because people who claimed authority based upon traditions and religious credentials made them this way. These people demanded that Paul do a religious ceremony instead of the church looking at the facts. They started a riot which resulted in Paul being arrested and eventually beheaded.

Then, God sent in the Roman Army who tore down the Temple so that it was impossible for the saved to keep the Jewish religious traditions. In addition, according to history, the Roman Army killed many including those saved Jews, their families and their followers.

Peter was the head of the Jerusalem church but when he wrote his first letter, after the Roman Army had gone through Jerusalem, he wrote “to the strangers scattered throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia”. That is: he wrote to the non-Jews (“strangers”) who were not in Jerusalem (“scattered throughout”) because his home church in Jerusalem was not there to be ministered to. When Peter wrote his second letter, he wrote it: “to them that have obtained like precious faith with us through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ”. In other words, he no longer was making the distinction between saved Jews and saved Gentiles which had caused all of the problems that led to God killing off so many saved Jews.

The lesson here is very simple. If there is a dispute between traditional religious leaders who are basing their authority on credentials given by men, and other authorities who have the evidence of the power of God behind them, you will bring destruction upon yourself and your family and followers if you follow anything but the evidence of the power of God.

Now, there are other Bible references I could cite but I will give a couple of simple tests and then move on.

The fact is that most people are not qualified to argue with doctrine based upon Bible truths because they do not know Bible truths well enough. Most people contend for the traditions which they have been taught. While that can be argued to be good or bad, the Bible gives us a couple of simple tests which will eliminate most of the religious error that we hear.

In **Isaiah 28**, God gives us His basic procedures for finding the single interpretation of the Bible and the multiple applications. However, that chapter is full of symbolic language which most people have a hard time understanding. What can be understood, fairly simply, is that the first eight (8) verses tell us that God will curse the priests of “Ephraim” who had the best religious credentials but were “drunkards” and devoted their life to the lusts of the flesh. Thus, it should be fairly simple to understand that God will not bless someone who devotes their life to the lusts of the flesh regardless of what religious credentials they have. Therefore, we are to refuse any doctrine from a religious leader who is living in obvious sin regardless of what religious credentials they claim.

Then, in **Isaiah 28:8**, we read: “For all tables are full of vomit *and* filthiness, *so that there is no place clean.*” In **1John 1:9** we read “If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.” Thus, these people in **Isaiah 28** have not “confessed their sins” and have not let Jesus “cleanse them from all unrighteousness” but insist that their religious ceremonies compensate for their sins. Therefore, we are to refuse any doctrine from a religious leader who claims that ceremonies replace our personal responsibility to live a righteous life and this is regardless of what religious credentials they claim.

Finally, we should reject any doctrine that comes from someone who mishandles the “word of God”. More details on this will follow but the obvious evidence is if they correct their 1611-KJV. One of the worst for doing this is the Roman Catholic Church. Granted, they didn’t stop at claiming that the pope speaks for God. In truth, he is a modern Biblical “antichrist”. In addition, they wrote their own bible. Now some may object to these statements but let me give a couple of simple examples. They claim that the

only way to understand a 'bible' is to 'spiritualize' what is said and that only priests, who have been trained by them can do this spiritualization. I am not exaggerating. My dad was on a first-name basis with three bishops who became cardinals and I personally discussed Catholic doctrine with several bishops, priests and cardinals.

An example of their 'spiritualization' is a nun insisting that **Genesis 4:1** has nothing to do with sex when it says: "And Adam knew Eve his wife; and she conceived, and bare Cain, and said, I have gotten a man from the LORD." The priest supported her when she claimed that you could not take that literally but that it was telling us about a spiritual discussion that a man and his wife had. I am not exaggerating. I asked them how they could expect anyone to be so stupid as to believe such an obvious lie but, with the number of Roman Catholics there are, obviously lots of people turn off their brains when it comes to religion. With that said, there are lots of other people and lots of other religions which do similar things which may not be as obvious. However, it does not matter how obvious they are. God gave each of us a brain and expects us to use it to the best of our ability when it comes to the subject of God, religion and our everlasting destination. When someone is blatantly mishandling the "word of God", reject every doctrine which comes from them.

Now, some fools say: 'they say so much that is good'. Satan quoted the Bible. The problem wasn't the "good" that he said but was with the part he left out which allowed him to pervert what he did quote. It has been said that the most believable lie is at least 98% truth. **1Corinthians 5:6** and **Galatians 5:9** say: "A little leaven leaveneth the whole lump." That is: a little poison in your doctrine turns it all into poison. A little excuse to sin turns your entire life to sin. It does not matter how much "good" they do or how much "good things" they say - if they are blatantly mishandling the "word of God", then they will lead you into sin and destruction. Reject everything that they say.

There are many more tests for proper Biblical authority but this is a book on basic doctrine and the prior tests are the basic tests of proper Biblical authority. With that covered, we will move on.

8. God's way versus Man's way:

We already covered the basic way to separate a true man of God from ministers of Satan. Further, we covered God's requirement that we trust His word and reject any replacements or criticisms of God's word. Now, we need to realize that **Isaiah 55:7-9** says: "Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon. For my thoughts *are* not your thoughts, neither *are* your ways my ways, saith the LORD. For *as* the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts."

No man understands all that God understands. At best, their thoughts neglect some things that God knows, understands and considers. Further, in addition to our limited understanding and knowledge, our natural way of thinking is wrong and, as already pointed out, our perspective is wrong. Therefore, man's best thoughts still produce a mess. For example, look at the result of the U.N. being formed to bring world peace. Look at the results of all of the promises of politicians. Now look at how our body was designed before the corruption of sin (old age, disease, etc) affected the body. That should show you the difference between God's design and the designs of men. With that in mind, now consider someone claiming that they can give you that man's way of understanding the Bible will give you a perfect and true understanding.

The first thing that God tells us to do is to stop listening to false preachers. Yes, they preach a lot of good. Satan also quoted the Bible while tempting Jesus. That was not the problem but the problem was what he left out in order to pervert the word of God. Likewise, these ministers of Satan preach a lot of good but they poison people and send them to Hell with the little bit of perversion that they include. And, the person who insists that they can spot and ignore all doctrinal error, while listening to these religious liars, is a fool. God says to stop listening to them and to stop listening to anyone who follows them.

Next, we are told that God only personally teaches people who are "weaned from the milk, *and* drawn from the breasts" (Isaiah 28:9). This means that God only directly teaches people who have passed His Test of Spiritual Maturity (on ljc1611kjv.com) and leaves the church to teach doctrine to people who are less mature. The first test, in God's test, is if people are divided based upon doctrine taught by men or if they got to the Word of God to resolve their differences in doctrine. Many preachers, including pastors, 'break fellowship' with others over doctrine which comes from religion and is not literally said at least twice in the Bible. We are instructed to not get our doctrine from such spiritually immature people.

Now, as bad as they are, many other religions are worse because they claim that their religious doctrine can correct the word of God or are blatantly mishandling the word of God some other way.

For example, I've heard preachers read a verse and say that they were 'taking one word of that verse for their jumping off place' and preached something that had nothing to do with the Bible reference. It does not matter how true what they preached was. If they were truly directed by God then God would have directed them to a place in His word which said that truth and people could base their faith on the "word of God" instead of on the preaching of man. That said, there are many variations and degrees of this error. However, the test is simple: if someone is preaching 'their convictions' instead of what the "word of God" literally says then we are probably going to be led into doctrinal error, at some point, if we continue to follow them.

There are many more tests for using God's way to understand God's word, but this is a book on basic doctrine and the prior tests are the basic tests to see if someone is using God's way to interpret God's word.

9. Attitude:

In Matthew 15 and Mark 7, we read that the Pharisees were criticizing Jesus and His disciples for not keeping their religious rules. Jesus said: "Do not ye yet understand, that whatsoever entereth in at the mouth goeth into the belly, and is cast out into the draught? But those things which proceed out of the mouth come forth

from the heart; and they defile the man" (**Matthew 15:17-18**). All throughout the Bible, we read that God is far more concerned with the attitudes of our heart than our religious actions. Therefore, when we come to the Bible to study it, we need to realize that there are religious people who teach a wrong attitude about how to study the "word of God" and there are people who teach a godly attitude. We must accept the godly attitude if we wish to receive blessings from God instead of cursing.

The people who teach doctrinal error are concerned with things on the outside, as opposed to internal matters. Instead of looking at God who "moved holy men", we much like to move a pen to write the "word of God" (**2Peter 1:21**). When we write something, the pen puts down the ink but we are doing the writing and determine what is written. Likewise, God determined what He wrote in His word. If that is not true, then we could not hold God to what is written in His word and we have no basis for any claims of blessings from God including everlasting salvation.

- a. Lost men, who erroneously claim to be some authority, look at the men that God used instead of looking at God. Their claims are equivalent to claiming that a pen determined what is written in any document such as a book. This is obvious foolishness. Based upon this erroneous basis, these self-appointed authorities declare that men used to be fallible, and conclude that there must be errors in the "word of God". People who are godly look at the indwelling "Holy Spirit" and how He changes a man from the inside to the outside. They look at "holy men" who are inspired by God and conclude that the "word of God" is infallible because it is inspired and preserved by God. The self-appointed authority looks for errors and declares that any errors imagined are in the "perfect word of God" (**2Samuel 22:31; Job 36:4; Psalms 18:30; 1John 2:5**) instead of admitting that the errors are from their own erroneous assumptions and erroneous method of interpretation. The honest person declares that all errors are due to fallible man and man's using the wrong way to interpret and understand the "word of God". They understand that it is man who is the source of error and not the "perfect word of God". The method which you decide to follow will determine if you are personally wise or a fool. The method that you choose to use will also determine the results that you will personally reap in your life.
- b. We are to study God's word. We do not have the power, or the authority, to challenge God. Therefore, we do not have the power, or the authority, to challenge God's written word. The theme of Job 40 could be said to be: 'Who do you think you are to question God?' Basically, we need to realize our true position, power and authority relative to God. We need to realize that Satan and devils are real and that they influence foolish religious people to challenge God. Those people, like the devils, will suffer for their attitudes after they have provided too much evidence, with their life, that they cannot deny their sinful attitude when they are judged by God. Such people not only challenge God, but they also encourage others to also challenge God. However, all who challenge God will, eventually, suffer for it. Therefore, if we wish to be wise and not be fools, we will refuse to listen to any voice which challenges God's position, power and authority. In particular, we need to have an attitude that we are fools to listen to any voice which challenges, or even questions, what is literally written in God's word. Yes, there is symbolic language in the "word of God", but God's word lets us know when it is using such. We will deal with that detail later. However, we need to start with a general attitude that we prove ourselves to be fools if we challenge what God wrote in His word and we also are fools to listen to any voice which encourages us to challenge what God wrote in the "word of God".
- c. **Genesis 3:1** says: "Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?" Like Satan, the ministers of Satan are "subtil".
 - i. One author who wrote a book which is often referenced on how to study the Bible starts out with: 'First, we must recognize that the Bible is written to, or about distinct classes.' This sounds good but is completely wrong and gets us looking the wrong way when we approach God's word. First, we must realize that God's word was written by God (**2Peter 1:21**) for the purpose of revealing Himself to man. Secondly, we must realize that "God is a Spirit" (**John 4:24**). Therefore, we are not looking at people but at God and we are not to look first at the physical perspective but at the spiritual perspective.

- ii. Next, he writes 'Second, we must inquire of each Scripture, whether book, section, or passage, to whom it is written, and righteously give to each the portion belonging to it.' Yes, there are promises written specifically to the Jews and it is wrong to 'claim' those promises for other people. However, most of the Bible was written with the intention that God wanted to instruct all men. Therefore, this attitude that he suggests causes men to refuse to obey God's commandments because they think 'that doesn't apply to me'.
- iii. Next, he writes 'Third, we must know Dispensational Truth. Fourth, we must put truth in its proper dispensational relation.'
- All forms of the word "dispensation" occur only 4 times in the Bible (**1Corinthians 9:17; Ephesians 1:10; Ephesians 3:2; Colossians 1:25**). Meanwhile, the word "Lord" occurs 8015 times. He would have us set, as a fundamental doctrine, what he teaches about "Dispensational" lies and ignore, or lightly treat, men's refusal to obey their "Lord". As several preachers have preached: 'We Need to Major on the Majors and Minor on the Minors'. We need to realize that what God writes about a lot in His word is what He wants us to pay close attention to and what God barely mentions are to be treated lightly or even ignored until we fully understand the more important things.
 - In the Bible we see "dispensation" used for:
 - A "dispensation of the gospel" (**1Corinthians 9:17**)
 - A "dispensation of time" (**Ephesians 1:10**)
 - A "dispensation of the grace of God" (**Ephesians 3:2**)
 - A "dispensation of ministry" (**Colossians 1:25**)
 - Notice that the "dispensation of time" only occurs once. This detail is covered more in the Hermeneutics class but God gives us a rule for "rightly dividing" rules that apply to everyone from what God uses in our personal relationship with Him to tell us something that only applies to us and, possibly, to those whom we lead. The rule is that the "word of God" must have something written literally at least twice for it to be a law which applies to everyone. This "dispensation of time" does **NOT** meet that requirement.
- iv. This truth brings us to the next important attitude which we must have when we study the Bible. There are things in the Bible which are meant for everyone and things which God gives for us only. We must separate them and not try to make others follow what God shows us to apply only to us.
- v. Not only does this "dispensation of time", and similar types of erroneous doctrine, fail to meet the test to be a doctrine which applies to everyone, but it is used to teach doctrinal error about salvation and is used to send people to Hell. If we participate in such, God will hold us responsible for the blood of everyone who goes to Hell because we taught this doctrinal error (**Ezekiel 22:4; 1Corinthians 11:27**). The specific error which is taught is that men were saved differently in different 'dispensations of time'. It also teaches that people had to keep the Mosaic Law in order to be saved while the Mosaic Law was in effect. However, **Romans 4:12-16; Galatians 3:7-29 and Hebrews 11:8-17** all teach that salvation is received by believing the promise of God like Abraham believed. In addition, **Galatians 3:17** says: "And this I say, *that* the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, cannot disannul, that it should make the promise of none effect.". Therefore, the Mosaic Law did **not** change the way of salvation.
- vi. While I could go on about doctrinal error when it comes to how to study the Bible, there is a very basic truth which will suffice if people keep to it. God wrote what he meant and meant what he wrote. As one Bible commentator wrote, "If the Bible makes literal sense seek no other sense."
- d. Another author on how to study the Bible started his book with:
- "Scripture in hand, diligent in study, what is my safeguard as to understanding it? My own competency? Its suitability to what is in me and around, which is most divinely true? Oh, no!... Let man humbly take his place of subjection, and God will not deny Himself — the Spirit never fails to honor the Lord Jesus; and it

is written, 'If any man will do His will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God.' Blessed ground this for man's soul to rest upon in contrast with the theologian or infidel ground of human competency and human diligence. To the spirit of obedience and subjection all is sure." *Doing*, according to the word of the Lord, must go before *knowing*. There must be a readiness to do His will if we would know or understand His doctrine; but the pride of man would put it the other way — I must know His word, before I yield obedience to His will.

Notice the difference in attitude of this author as opposed to the prior author. Where the prior author developed his own understanding of what he thought was right and then wanted to use scripture to support his own beliefs, this author tells us to obey what the scripture plainly says and expect understanding to come from God after the obedience.

10. Bible Word Definitions

The word of God tells us that God preserved His word (the entire message), for a thousand generations, in **Deuteronomy 7:9**; **1Chronicles 16:15** and **Psalms 105:8**. In addition, we are told that we are to live by “every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God” in: **Deuteronomy 8:3**; **Proverbs 30:5**; **Matthew 4:4** and **Luke 4:4**. Further, God does not change (**Malachi 3:6**; **Hebrews 13:8**).

Since God does not change, He does not give a Bible word with more than one definition and He does not give the same definition to more than one word. To do so would require God to change. Men do these things, which cause confusion. But, “God is not the author of confusion” (**1Corinthians 14:33**). If you look at any man-written dictionary, you will see multiple ‘definitions’ for almost every word. This causes confusion as to which ‘definition’ we are to use. The truth is that most of those so-called ‘definitions’ are actually the multiple applications and very few man-written dictionaries give you the true root definition. In addition, you can find more than one word, in those dictionaries, which have the same definition. This is another source of confusion and “God is not the author of confusion”. Therefore, there is a difference between the way that men define words and how God defines words in the “word of God”.

God only had one definition for any given Bible word but those words can have many applications. Religious tradition tells people to use the definitions from these man-written dictionaries even though they cause confusion and doctrinal error. As a result, people believe that there are many definitions for all words, including Bible words. Going on, we see that **1Corinthians 2:14** tells us: “But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned.” So, our sinful nature, which the lost and carnal follow, tell us to accept a wrong definition from these man-written dictionaries. This is the source of much doctrinal error which is taught. For example, what men call ‘love’ the Bible calls ‘lust’. This is a major reason why a man claims to be saved and to obey the Bible and marries a woman that he claims to ‘love’. However, years later when she is fat and not as pretty, he wants to divorce her because he claims that he no longer ‘loves’ her. Now, go back and replace the word ‘love’ with ‘lust’ in his claims and everything becomes clearer.

In addition to the worldly wrong definition, we have the religious definition accepted by many ‘good Godly fundamental Baptist’ preachers and church members. They claim that **1Corinthians 13** is the ‘love chapter’, while the true Bible ‘love chapter’ is **1John 3**. **1Corinthians 13** is, actually, the ‘charity chapter’. True Biblical “charity” is: ‘showing God’s love to others regardless of who they are because “God is no respecter of persons” (**Acts 10:34**, also: **Deuteronomy 10:17**; **16:19**; **2Chronicles 19:7**; **Job 34:19**; **Psalms 82:1-2**; **Matthew 22:16**; **Luke 20:21**; **Romans 2:11**; **Galatians 2:6**; **Ephesians 6:9**; **Colossians 3:11,25**; **James 2:4,9**; **1Peter 1:17**). The true Biblical definition of “love” is totally different.

The true Biblical definition of “love” is found in **Ephesians 5:25-27** (“Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it; That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish.”). Now, there is a lot of doctrine in this reference but notice that “Christ gave himself for (the church) that he might sanctify and cleanse it”. This is the ministry which adds “life more abundantly” (**John 10:10**) after our initial salvation. This is what gets us increased everlasting rewards in Heaven. Therefore, true Biblical “love” is: ‘doing what gets the other person the best everlasting results’. A parent who refuses to do whatever is required to give their child an attitude adjustment, when they are being rebellious, is not loving that child but actually hates them, according to the Bible,

Now, with that simple example in mind, the reader should understand that they need to use the Biblical definition for Bible words if they want to avoid doctrinal error. That means that each person needs to use the proper procedure in order to get the true definition.

In order to find the true single definition of a Bible word, we have to look at every place where the word is used in the Bible. We need to consider how the word is used within the context where it is found. Once

we know every usage, we then need to see what is common and separate that from what varies. What is common in every usage is the single definition. What varies are the multiple applications.

A simple example is the name of "Jesus". This name is used 983 times. Once it is used for "Justus". Twice it is used for "Joshua" of the Old Testament and the other times it is used for 'the Son of God in human flesh'. These are three different applications with the single definition being: 'the name of a literal physical man'.

In addition to finding the proper definition, we must realize that no two Bible words have the same definition. When God used a word and gave it a definition, God would have to change in order to give the same definition to another word and we already saw that God does not change. Now, many people seriously believe that there is no problem with changing Bible words, especially when it comes to the roles of the Son of God. Where the Bible has "Lord", they will use "Jesus" because "Jesus" is the person who fills the role of "Lord". However, the role of "Lord" has a totally different doctrinal meaning than the name of "Jesus". So, the Bible says: "For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved." (**Romans 10:13**). The phrase "call upon the name" means: 'trust in the power and authority of the name'. If someone wants to change their citizenship, they must trust in the power and authority of the government to make them a citizen. They must swear an oath to accept the right of the government to make laws that they must obey, accept the right of the government to judge their obedience, and accept the right of the government to punish them for disobeying. Likewise, when we were lost, we were citizens of the kingdom of Satan. If we want to become citizens of the kingdom of God, we must accept "Jesus" as our personal "Lord". We must swear an oath to accept the right of the "Lord" to make laws that we must obey, accept the right of the "Lord" to judge our obedience and accept the right of the "Lord" to punish us for disobeying.

Now, the people who interchange these words tell people to 'ask Jesus to be your savior'. The result is people who believe they can continue to live a life of sin and that their 'Jesus' must continue paying for all of their ongoing sins and give them eternal bliss and a mansion next door to Peter as a reward for their life of sin. Hopefully, the reader understands how wrong this doctrine is. And, hopefully the reader understands that the basis of this doctrinal error is the belief that we can change the role of the Son of God from what the Bible actually specifies to what lost and carnal people prefer.

Just to be perfectly clear, we are dealing with righteous legal principals in true Biblical salvation and God is always righteous. It is not enough that "Jesus paid for all of my sins". **1John 2:2** says: "And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for *the sins of the whole world*." So, how does anyone go to Hell? Since Jesus "is the propitiation for *the sins of the whole world*", no one could go to Hell if that payment was sufficient. However, most people have dealt with a government unit where they had to pay money. In every case, people must pay, then get a receipt for the payment, then get the legal record updated as a separate legal transaction. There must be a separate legal transaction to update the legal record.

In order for a lost person to get the payment by Jesus applied to their Heavenly criminal sin record, they must accept Jesus as their personal Lord. This is the requirement of God and no being is going to bust into heaven and force God to change His legal record of criminal sin. In addition, God must legally adopt the sinner as His child by adding their name to His "book of life" (**Philippians 4:3; Revelation 3:5; Revelation 13:8; Revelation 17:8; Revelation 20:12,15; Revelation 21:27; Revelation 22:19**). No one is going to force God to do that.

After being saved, **1John 1:9** says: "If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.". Please notice the word "and", which is the Mathematical function of addition. If we throw away either side of the "and", we change the end result. Thus, we must let Jesus "cleanse us from all unrighteousness" if we want Him to update our sin record in the family court system called the "judgment seat of Christ" (**Romans 14:10; 2Corinthians 5:10**). I know that a lot of people teach the doctrinal error that a never-changing God will change for the "judgment seat of Christ" and not curse

disobedient children, but that doctrine is from Satan so that saved people lose everlasting rewards and so that they have tears in Heaven until after the “great white throne” judgment (**Revelation 20:11**).

The main reason why Satan gets God’s people to use “Jesus” instead of “Lord” is so that they will ignore the legal and judgment consequences of ongoing sin and reap the results of a life of sin. The main reason why people use wrong definitions for Bible reasons is that they fail to realize that they have been deceived by devils and have accepted doctrinal error, which will result in loss of everlasting rewards if not resulting in worse consequences.

Please see the Bible Word Definitions at ljc1611kiv.com for true Biblical definitions of words used in the Bible. These are not always the same as what is commonly thought and common definitions, and wrong definitions from man-written dictionaries, can lead to doctrinal error,

11. Belief, Faith and Hope:

These Bible words are often confused and the doctrines which come from using a wrong definition for these words can result in someone believing that they are saved when, in truth, they are still lost.

When we have the assurance that something is true, that is called belief. When we have such an assurance for a while, but then forget it, that is called a ‘head belief’. However, when we keep this belief for all of our life, and it affects how we live for the rest of our life, then that is what the Bible calls: “believe in thine heart”. The Bible talks about this type of “heart belief” in: **Mark 11:23; Mark 16:14; Luke 8:12; Luke 24:25; Joh 14:1; Acts 4:32; Acts 8:37; Romans 10:9-10**. This includes the basis of true Biblical salvation (**Romans 10:9-10**).

The problem is that many people preach and teach a ‘head belief’ for salvation and God does not honor a ‘head belief’. Look up the verses just references and pray about them and you should be shown this truth by God.

The next doctrinal error, that many preach and teach, involves using the definition of “belief” for the word “faith”. True Biblical “faith” is: ‘an action word that is based upon a belief in a promise found within the Bible with the action dictated by the Bible and the understanding that our action does not force God to act nor determines when or how God acts but proves that of our own free will we are giving God permission to act in and through our life to do what He promised within His word’. The main point is that true Biblical “faith” is an action word. Lots of people believe they have “faith” while they do nothing. They are confusing “faith” with “belief”.

One of the doctrinal errors, which is commonly preached and taught, is that we are saved by faith. That is a religious doctrine which goes against the truth from the Bible. The Bible truth is that we are saved by grace and by hope but we are saved through faith. Think of a mountain that blocks you from getting to what is on the other side of it. Now think of a tunnel that goes through the mountain. You must enter the mountain and come out on the other side of the mountain in order to go through the tunnel / mountain.

Likewise, the requirement for faith blocks many people from true Biblical salvation and true blessings from God. We enter “faith” by doing the actions required in the word of God and we must keep doing them until we come out on the other side and receive what was blocked from us. For example, the Bible says that that the “just shall live / walk by faith” (**1Samuel 2:35; Psalms 101:6; Habakkuk 2:4; Romans 1:17; Romans 4:12; 2Corinthians 5:7; Galatians 3:11; Hebrews 10:38**). In the context of these references, we see that this is a requirement for ongoing action. In addition, we see this truth taught in other lessons of the Bible such as ‘The Parable of the Unjust Judge’ (**Luke 18:1-8**). Therefore, people who claim that true Biblical “faith” produces instant results are preaching and teaching doctrinal error,

As already mentioned, we are saved by “grace” (**Acts 15:11; Ephesians 2:5,8; 2Timothy 1:9**) and by “hope” (**Romans 8:24**). True Biblical “hope” is an action word, like “faith” but is based upon the character of the person whom we put our “hope” in. When we do not have a promise from the word of God, but we

have a belief in the person and character of Jesus Christ and act in the way that we truly believe He will reward, that is true Biblical “hope”. For example, we have no promise that God will save someone when we give them the Gospel. But we tell people the true Gospel because we believe that Jesus Christ will reward our efforts to do so.

Likewise, we are saved by “grace”. Now, many people use a wrong definition for “grace”. Grace is given by men as well as by God. So, a definition which denies this fact is wrong. In addition, “grace” is given to make the giver look good. Therefore, people who preach a Gospel of salvation by “grace”, which does not include a God-caused change, are preaching doctrinal error. Our God-caused changed life is what gives God glory (**Ephesians 2:7**). If we do not let God change us after He saves us then He wasted His “grace” on us.

The true “grace” of salvation is an ongoing personal relationship with the Lord Jesus Christ. We cannot earn the right to this relationship. However, this relationship is supposed to change us to be more like God.

Thus, we see that we are saved by “grace” and by “hope”. In both cases, our true Biblical salvation is accomplished by the person who is the Lord Jesus Christ. Any claim that it is our action, such as “saying the sinner’s prayer”, is a doctrinal error called works salvation. And, the truth of Biblical salvation is that God wants to use this ongoing personal relationship to change us so that we become more like God. That change will give God glory and allow us to enjoy Heaven more.

12. Prayer:

Prayer is how we get God's help in our study. We already saw **1Corinthians 2:14**, which says: "But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned." Unless we truly get God's "Holy Spirit" involved in our study, we will end up using the methods of "the natural man" and end up with doctrinal error. There are several Messages, on ljc1611kjb.com, which deal with this subject and many good books available which deal with this subject better than I do. I only have this section in this book to tell the reader that prayer is critical before any attempt to study the "word of God".

1. Start every day with prayer.
2. Ask God for help on everything, especially studies.
3. Recognize personal inadequacies.
4. Always pray and ask for God's discernment while reading and studying the "word of God" (**1Corinthians 2:14**).

Types of Applications in the Bible

The Bible contains many 'special types of speech', as they might be called, which are not necessarily used in other documents or which may be used in a different way in other documents. We need to understand these 'special types of speech', the way that the Bible uses them, if we wish to avoid doctrinal error. We need at least a basic understanding of these 'special types of speech' in order to truly understand what the "word of God" is telling us when we come across these 'special types of speech'. Every 'special types of speech', in this section, had doctrinal error taught about it because self-proclaimed 'experts' want people to believe them, even when they are not the expert which they claim to be. Therefore, they make up some lie, which they hope people will accept, rather than admit their ignorance of these spiritual matters.

One example is the parable. Yes, parables can be found elsewhere but they are not as common as found in the Bible. In addition, parables, which are found outside of the Bible, do not necessarily convey the spiritual truths found in Biblical parables. These things can be easily taken out of context and claimed to convey a different message, or serve a different purpose, than the true Biblical message and purpose. Therefore, we will cover each of these 'special types of speech' so that the reader will understand how to deal with them when they are encountered within the Bible.

1. Basic Procedure:

There are lots of religions out there which claim that what they preach is the 'pure word' that came from their 'holy man'. When you ask for a way to verify their claim it turns out that there is no way to verify their word. You have to have faith in them, or in their religious leader, but they did not come back from the dead by their own power, like Jesus Christ did. Therefore, none of these people can provide evidence that they have more authority than Jesus Christ has. Therefore, anything which they claim, which also contradicts what is literally written in the KJV-1611 Bible, is from the "doctrines of devils" (**1Timothy 4:1**).

In addition, we have many contradicting doctrines which all claim to come from the Bible. They cannot do so since God does not change (**Malachi 3:6; Hebrews 13:8**) and God would have to change in order for the "word of God" to say one thing in one place and a contradicting thing in another place. You have a better chance of gravity failing than you have of the truth of the "word of God" contradicting itself.

The fact is that people are lazy, and are especially intellectually lazy. Many liars and false prophets rely on this fact and gain followers by claiming that the Bible says what people want to believe and will be too intellectually lazy to verify what they believe. The "word of God" warns us with "He that hath ears to hear, let him hear" (**Matthew 11:15; Matthew 13:9, 43; Mark 4:9, 23; Mark 7:16; Luke 8:8; Luke 14:35; Revelation 2:7, 17**). The "word of God" warns us that God expects us to use the brain that He gave us and verify that what we are told comes from the "word of God". Anyone who is too intellectually lazy to do their own personal verification will suffer the judgment of God for being a Biblical "fool".

Every person whom I have met, who also teaches how to study the Bible and was willing to talk about the procedure that they taught – used procedures written by men. The same is true for every preacher whom I have met who was also taught this subject in Bible School with the exception of those whom I have taught.

I teach a procedure which comes directly from **Isaiah 28**. Now, I have heard of people who teach or use at least part of the procedure that I use. However, I have never met nor contacted them. In addition, to the best of my knowledge, many of those people only use part of the procedure that I teach. In addition, to the best of my knowledge, no other person has published their results and openly challenged any and all to find any contradiction to what the Bible literally says or any instance where what I write in one place

contradicts what I write in another place. Lots of people can claim lots of things. However, unless they publish, you can not verify their claims nor can you verify if they change their claims. Since I am not publishing my own opinion but am simply using God's procedure to publish what God's word says, I am not worried about a contradiction. God does not produce contradictions and so long as I stay a messenger of what God says, I have no worry about contradictions.

Quite frankly, I started studying the word of God at least 20 hours-per-week in 2000, and upped it to at least 40 hours-per-week until now. In addition, I plan on continuing this rate as long as God allows me to do so. I believe you will find extremely few people who can be that "diligent" (**Hebrews 11:6**). As a result, it should be understood that God rewards in proportion to how much we sacrifice and serve God. Please understand, I am not "boasting" but am simply stating my qualifications from God. Definitely, if you find someone who has more evidence of God working through them to produce an interpretation without errors and without conflicts, follow them instead of the procedure that I provide. However, until you find such a source, know that many godly preachers have testified that the results which I have produced cannot come from the natural man but are possible only by God using me to help His people understand the "word of God" without errors.

That written, the procedure that I teach is incompletely written on ljc1611kiv.com under the Herme Menu Item. Below is a very small summary of that procedure. The full procedure is provided to cover every contingency such as is required to truly prove the procedure. What is below is sufficient for the beginning Bible student to use.

- a. Stop listening to anyone who teaches doctrinal error. Yes, such people will teach 'good things'. However, "A little leaven leaveneth the whole lump." (**1Corinthians 5:6; Galatians 5:9**). The little bit of poison that they put into their doctrine will turn your entire life into one that excuses ongoing sin. The simplest way to identify these people is:
 - i. They excuse ongoing sins of the flesh (**Isaiah 28:1-7**).
 - ii. They excuse replacing our personal relationship with Jesus Christ by ceremonies and fancy religious things (**Isaiah 28:8**).
 - iii. They have a "spirit" which matches a devil and does not match the "Holy Spirit" of God (**1John 4:1**).
- b. Be saved, sanctified and pass God's Test of Spiritual Maturity (1Corinthians Book Study on ljc1611kiv.com). Until you can pass that test, listen only to the teaching of the church where God has placed you (**Isaiah 28:9**).
- c. Understand that the word "upon" means: 'one on top of another'. This word is used eleven (11) times in **Isaiah 28** and makes keeping Bible reference in context absolutely mandatory. Probably, at least 85% of Biblical errors can be eliminated just by going to the place of a quoted Bible reference and checking if the person is taking the reference out of context. Even if you can't say exactly what the entire context is saying, you should be able to understand the context enough to know if what the person is claiming is related to the context within the Bible or not. If their claim does not match the context, reject their claim and their doctrine.
- d. Learn God's truths which never change for any reason ("precept") such as the law of gravity, in creation, and the law that anything said literally at least two times is part of God's law that everyone must believe and that will be used to judge everyone (**Isaiah 28:9**).
 - i. Jesus used this truth when arguing doctrine with the Jewish religious leaders (**John 8:17**).
 - ii. One of the simplest "precepts" to understand is that God always hates sin and will not let it into His presence. That is why He turned His back on His "only begotten Son" (**Matthew 27:46; Mark 15:34**) after God "hath made him *to be* sin for us, who knew no sin" (**2Corinthians 5:21**).
 - iii. All religions which claim any form of 'salvation' while the people continue in a life-style of sin, with no judgment for the sin, are proclaiming "doctrines of devils" (**1Timothy 4:1**).
 - iv. Another simple "precept" to understand is that God would be a murderer to send His "only begotten Son" to die and go to Hell to pay for our sins if there was any other way to get into

Heaven. All religions which claim any form of 'works salvation' are proclaiming "doctrines of devils" (**1Timothy 4:1**).

- v. This type of study is often called a 'Subject Study' and can be sub-divided into a 'Word Study' and a 'Doctrinal Study'. Both the single true Biblical meaning of a Bible word and the true doctrines will be the same across the Bible. More details on these two types of study are given below.
- e. Our procedure, from **Isaiah 28**, continues with "line upon line". This is talking about what is literally written within the context of any place in the Bible. We already saw the meaning of the word "upon". However, the important part of this point is that the original language meaning of the word "line" is: 'a measuring line'.
 - i. God said that he would preserve His "word" ('the message of the entire Bible'), His "every word" ('we must use the Bible definitions for Bible words'), and "every jot and tittle" ('punctuation marks').
 - ii. The preserved "every word" is combined into phrases (or sentences) with phrases and sentences combined with 'punctuation marks' ("every jot and tittle"). The 'punctuation marks' each have a unique detailed function but all are used to control the meaning of the written language with a single sentence being the expression of a single thought and a partial sentence, taken out of context from the rest of the sentence, is a partial truth full lie.
 - iii. God had His "word" written in sentences and paragraphs. John completed **Revelation** about 100 AD and God finished His Bible at that time with three promises (beginning, middle and end of Bible) to curse anyone who added to His "word". Men started chopping God's "word" into verses in 200 AD and the current verse format is the third attempt. (God, Who does not change, did not make all of these changes.)
 - iv. As we see with Parables, God left His word to cause the lost to believe error while the saved, with the help of God's "Holy Spirit", can find the truth. The truth is that we are to be "rightly dividing the word of truth" (**2Timothy 2:15**) and using the verse format is wrong and leads to doctrinal error. (This is proven in my lessons on Hermeneutics which have this book / course as a prerequisite.)
- f. One thing which is often overlooked is the Biblical meaning of words. For example, there is a lot of doctrinal argument about "baptism" and most of the arguments are based upon a non-Biblical definition of this word. As of this writing, ljc1611kjv.com has over 2000 Word Studies which provide the Bible definitions of Bible words.
 - i. In some cases, the common usage definitions add to the Bible definition. In some cases, the common usage definitions subtract from the Bible definition. In some cases, the common usage definitions replace to the Bible definition. In every case where the common usage definition differs from the Bible definition, doctrinal error results. Ask any honest lawyer if he can file a suit for fraud using the common usage definition of the word 'fraud'. Like with all other "book of the law", the legal definition will be used by court.
 - ii. The words "ye", "thy", "thee", "thine", and "thou" are all used to tell us about our personal relationship with God. The world tries to lead us into doctrinal error by removing the personal aspect of these words and denying our personal relationship with Jesus Christ. Everyone would have a better understanding of their Bible if they stuck the word 'personal' into every place where they see these words because that is the meaning which we have been taught to remove.
 - iii. Words like "and", "but", "if", "for", "now", and similar words, are words which people are taught to read over without thinking about them. However, these words are critical to finding the true meaning of a Bible passage and they can actually be more important than the words which we normally pay more attention to.
- g. Our procedure, from **Isaiah 28**, tells us that God uses the sentence format to "teach knowledge and...make to understand doctrine". Using the verse format is wrong and leads to doctrinal error and is using man's way which is not God's way (**Isaiah 55:8**).

- h. As the true saying goes, there is one interpretation and many applications. Our procedure, from **Isaiah 28**, does make the distinction by adding other human languages (“tongues”) and symbolism (“stammering lips”) part of what is to be used to understand what is said within the context of a section of the Bible. However, those methods are not to be used to render the single interpretation. Many good and godly people have ended up teaching what they found in one place of the Bible, using these methods, as a doctrinal truth that applies to the entire Bible. These errors are very seductive and we need to be extra careful of them because they are usually preached by people that we admire.
- i. Related to the prior point is the study of doctrines. The word “doctrine” means: ‘Bible teachings’. There are certain truths which are taught by the true Bible. The basic truth is the same everywhere it is taught but it is also taught as it applies to different context and we need to study these truths, and how they are applied, by studying every place where the truth is found in the Bible. For example, the Bible tells us “God is love” (**1John 4:8, 16**). Now, many people get led into the same doctrinal error that the church of Corinth was led into and believe that true Biblical “love” means that we tolerate anything and everything from anyone and everyone. However, **Romans 9:13** tells us: “As it is written, Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated.” Also, **Galatians 1:9** says: “As we said before, so say I now again, If any *man* preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.” Now, many people have a hard time matching this type of behavior with “love” because they have been taught error about true “love”. Part of the true doctrine of “love” is that true “love” protects those who are “loved” from harm. Esau, and those people who “preach any other gospel”, taught a way of life which would bring the condemnation of God upon a person. Thus, doctrines need to be studied every place that they are presented in the Bible in order to understand the basic truth and the many applications of that truth as presented in the “word of God”.
- j. There is a lot more to this procedure but that is a separate class. The above is sufficient for now.

2. Testaments: Old and New

Before the Textus Receptus, and KJV-1611, were put together, various books of the Bible were in individual documents, such as scrolls. So, someone might have a copy of the book of Isaiah, but not have all of what we consider to be the Old Testament. However, all of the books of the Bible were brought together and made a single document at the time that the KJV-1611 was created in the English language.

Now, there are so-called ‘lost books of the Bible’ which were not lost but were rejected. They were known and rejected because, while men claimed that they were written by the true God, the doctrines which they taught were / are “doctrines of devils” or doctrines of ungodly men. They do not convey the true Spirit of the God of the Bible like all other books which are in your true Bible. Devil motivated men are still trying to get ignorant people to accept those lies as true scripture. Every person whom I have ever talked to, who support such books, had never the character of God to the character which is taught by those books. Most such people did not know even the basic character of the God of the Bible and, yet, claimed that they could determine if a doctrine came from a devil or came from the true God of the Bible. Such people, that I have ever talked to, claimed some authority based upon a lie that someone else told them and that they’ve never even verified.

John 1:12-13 says: “But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, *even* to them that believe on his name: Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.” In the Bible, the word “son” means: ‘someone who receives the character of the father’. Satan is the father of lies and devils still try to get people to believe lies. We need to verify anything which we believe before claiming it to be an eternal truth such as what the true Bible gives to all men. That verification starts by verifying if the person truly has received the character of the God of the Bible or does their character represent a different spirit. That type of verification needs to be done to these books which deceived men and liars claim are ‘lost books of the Bible’.

Moving on, at the time that the Textus Receptus, and KJV-1611, were put together, The interpreters decided to start the “New Testament” with the Gospels followed by the Book of Acts, which is the history of the early church, then followed by the Pauline Epistles, then the general epistles and finalized by Revelation, which presents future events which reveal (it is a single revelation) that “Jesus Christ” is “Lord of lords, and King of kings” (**1Timothy 6:15; Revelation 17:14; Revelation 19:16**).

In addition, we see a similar type of organization in what is labeled the ‘Old Testament’. That is: everything from **Genesis** through **Malachi** was organized according to the type of book, and then that group of books is labeled as the “Old Testament”. This label was based upon the fact that those books were written before the birth of “Jesus Christ”. However, that is an unfortunate label since it leads to people believing doctrinal error. And, much like parables, God left things that way so that lost people and spiritually immature (carnal) people would not understand the truth while spiritually mature people would understand God’s truth.

Please consider: **Matthew 13:10-16** says: “And the disciples came, and said unto him, Why speakest thou unto them in parables? He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given. For whosoever hath, to him shall be given, and he shall have more abundance: but whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken away even that he hath. Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand. And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive: For this people’s heart is waxed gross, and *their* ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with *their* eyes, and hear with *their* ears, and should understand with *their* heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them. But blessed *are* your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear.”

Pay attention to the message from Jesus. God deliberately tells the truth in a way that you must have the “Holy Spirit” in order to understand. However, God holds everyone responsible for understanding and responding properly to the truth. People who refuse to accept God’s salvation and the indwelling “Holy Spirit” are still held responsible for obeying the truth and God punishes them for disobeying. Therefore, there are several things, such as parables and this division between the “Old Testament” and the “New Testament” where God allows the lost to believe doctrinal error but expects the saved to accept the truth which is revealed by the “Holy Spirit”. As a result, all people, saved and lost, will suffer the judgment of God if they believe doctrinal error about these things.

That written, we now need to see what the word of God actually says about this division between the “Old Testament” and the “New Testament”.

Hebrews 9:16-17 says: “For where a testament *is*, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator. For a testament *is* of force after men are dead: otherwise it is of no strength at all while the testator liveth.” Now, the entire chapter needs to be understood in order to keep things in context but I will summarize here. There is a legal document used by men everywhere and at all times called a ‘Last Will and Testament’. It has two sections, the first being the ‘Will’ and the second being the ‘Testament’. It is called the ‘Last Will and Testament’ since it is not in force until “the death of the testator”, as our Bible reference says. Now, most men chose to ignore the ‘Testament’ section since they tended to not listen to the old man while he was alive. They only care about the ‘Will’ section since that says who gets all of his stuff in this world. However, God ignores the ‘Will’ section since this world is temporary and He is going to burn it all up some day. God says that the ‘Testament’ section is what is important. Thus, what the Bible calls a “Testament”, the world calls a ‘will’. Now, with this understanding, we can look at this chapter, and other references in the “New Testament” and understand what is really being said since the “New Testament” is what most people think of as a ‘Will’.

As our reference says: “For a testament (‘Will’) *is* of force after men are dead: otherwise it is of no strength at all while the testator (‘Will writer’) liveth.” The “New Testament” did not come into existence until after the death and resurrection of “Jesus Christ”. In particular, Pentecost, as reported in **Acts 2**, gives us the birth (not conception / start of spiritual life) of the church and the official start of the “New Testament” and what men call the ‘Church Age’. The main identifying spiritual characteristic of the “New Testament” (‘Church Age’) being the indwelling

“Holy Spirit” (**Acts 2:4, 16-21**). In the “Old Testament” people like prophets would receive God’s “Holy Spirit”, but the “Holy Spirit” was not given to indwell for all of their life. Therefore, this difference in the personal relationship with God, which is enabled by the indwelling “Holy Spirit”, is the main spiritual difference of the “New Testament”.

Now, before we continue, we need to realize that our chapter, in **Hebrews**, speaks about a “new covenant” and a “New Testament” and they are not the same thing even though they are related. A “covenant”, in the Bible, is a spiritual contract which is enforced by the court of God. In **Acts 2:14-21**, Peter explains that the prophet Joel had prophesied about a “new covenant” and that God had made it available after Jesus Christ returned to Heaven. The main feature of the “new covenant” is the indwelling “Holy Spirit” and everyone who receives the “new covenant” also receives the indwelling “Holy Spirit”. Such people are the “children of God” and anyone who does not have the indwelling “Holy Spirit” is not a “child of God”. In addition, only a “child of God” can inherit from God. Therefore, the “New Testament” applies only to those people who are a “children of God” and God ignores the claims of all other people who are liars when they try to claim the right to receive anything from God. In addition, the “new covenant” and the “New Testament” are different but related. Accepting the “new covenant” makes us a “child of God” while the “New Testament” tells us how to receive blessings (“inherit”) after we become a “child of God”. Anyone who does not have the “new covenant” has no legal claim to the things of the “New Testament”. People who are trying to claim things from the “New Testament”, such as the ability to speak for the God of the Bible, while they base their claim on anything other than having the indwelling “Holy Spirit”, have been deceived, or are deliberate liars and ministers of Satan, and are passing on lies from devils.

With that truth as our basis, we will return to **Hebrews 9:18-23**. There, we see that the religious sacrifices are deliberately presented as being part of “the first *testament*”. In addition, the chapter starts with: “Then verily the first *covenant* had also ordinances of divine service, and a worldly sanctuary.” (**Hebrews 9:1**). The chapter continues by listing the things used for the religious sacrifices under the “Old Testament”. Then, in **Hebrews 9:8-15**, the author explains the difference in the relationship between God and God’s people offered under each “Testament”. But, in these sentences, the author is relating the religious actions to the spiritual relationship. Thus, we see that the entire chapter is telling us that the “New Testament” replaced the relationship and the religious activities of the “Old Testament”.

Pay attention people. There are many religions which claim to represent the God of the Bible while they insist that things which were part of the “Old covenant” or the “Old Testament” are still in effect even while they try to claim things which are only given under the “new covenant” and the “New Testament”. Think about the claims by religions, like the Roman Catholic Church, which claim the blessings which come from the “new covenant” are only given if we keep ‘sacrifices’ which were done away with when God replaced the old with the new. Think about religions which claim we must keep Sabbaths even while the “New Testament” tells us that such commandments were done away with when God replaced the old with the new. There are many more applications to this principal, but we will move on.

If we look at the Mosaic Law, in the “Old Testament”, we can see three sections in it. They are called the Moral Law, the Religious Law and the Civil Law. The Civil Law said what the government has to do and how they were to judge crime. That is where you read “an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth” (**Exodus 21:24; Leviticus 24:20; Deuteronomy 19:21**). What the government can legally do is different from what we can legally do as individual persons. The government can kill people but we are not allowed to do so. The government can lock people up but we are not allowed to do so. Therefore, the Roman Catholic Church lies when they claim that Jesus changed the Mosaic Law when He said: “But I say unto you, That ye resist not evil: but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also.” (**Matthew 5:39**). The fact is that Jesus was speaking about our personal responsibility under the Moral part of the Mosaic Law. He did not change the legal rights of the government and did not change God’s instructions to governments on how to punish people who were proven criminals.

In the “New Testament” we are told to obey the civil authorities of the land where we are at (**Titus 3:1**). The fact is that, today, even in the country of Israel, the Civil Law, of the Mosaic Law, is not used. Therefore, it is replaced by the civil law of the land where we are at. With that, we must keep in mind **1Corinthians 10:11** (“Now all these things happened unto them for ensamples: and they are written for our admonition, upon whom the ends of the world are come.”) **1Corinthians 10:11** is not speaking about the Civil part of the Mosaic Law, but the principal found there still applies. That is: The Civil part of the Mosaic Law shows us what a righteous civil law is. Therefore, it should be a guide to law makers and judges and all who deal with the making of laws.

Moving on, in **Galatians 3**, and in particular **Galatians 3:17**, we are told that the promises and covenants made by God were not changed by the coming nor by the going of the Mosaic Law. If the reader truly studies what is called the Moral Law portion of the Mosaic Law, what they find is commandments to do what was required to receive the promises and covenants of God which were established before the Mosaic Law was written. The Moral Law deals with our personal relationship with God and only clarifies what was already established by God. Therefore, since these promises and covenants did not go away, that portion of the Mosaic Law is still in effect. A simple example is that Abraham was saved by believing God and God always requires people to believe His promises for salvation. Abraham lived four hundred thirty (430) years before Moses and the Mosaic Law. In spite of the error taught by many who hold to ‘great ages’, God did not change His plan of salvation during the time of the Mosaic law.

Now, we see that within the Mosaic Law, the portion called the Civil Law was replaced by the commandment to obey the laws of the land we live in. In addition, the portion called the Moral Law still in effect and is based upon the promises of God and those have never changed. That leaves the portion called the Religious Law. It was only that portion which was replaced by the “New Testament”. This is the truth that **Hebrews 9** explains. Only the Religious part of the Mosaic Law was replaced by the “New Testament”. **That makes the true Biblical definition of the “Old Testament” to be only the Religious part of the Mosaic Law and not Genesis through Malachi.**

In addition, since God had the Temple destroyed, it is impossible to keep the sacrificial requirements of the Religious part of the Mosaic Law. Religions can come up with their own sacrifices and claim that the God of the Bible has to accept their so-called sacrifices. However, all throughout the Bible we see God label such as “idolatry” and God curses people who participate in “idolatry”.

The fact is that there were “many thousands of Jews there are which believe; and they are all zealous of the (religious part of the) law” (**Acts 21:20**) even after God had made it clear that He had set aside the Religious part of the Mosaic Law. They were following what actually comes from the Bible but were insisting that they could refuse changes made by God. Since they refused to follow the will of God, God killed off those “many thousands of Jews there are which believe; and they are all zealous of the law”. They were preaching what is called a ‘works religion’.

Further, there are religions of today which claim to be Bible based but which teach doctrinal error by including works as a requirement for spiritual salvation and / or spiritual sanctification. One example of this is the Roman Catholic Church which tries to claim that they are keeping the New Testament while they try to teach keeping the Religious part of the Mosaic Law. We see this in their doctrinal error is having priests. **Hebrews 5:4** says: “And no man taketh this honour unto himself, but he that is called of God, as *was* Aaron.” God determines who He will accept as priests and men cannot dictate this honor to God. In addition, God has done away with all priesthood except Jesus Christ (**Hebrews 5:10**), and the believers under Him, in the “New Testament”. Therefore, any religion which claims that we must keep part of the Religious part of the Mosaic Law is teaching doctrinal error.

Now, with that dealt with, we have the opposite form of doctrinal error which claims that God put aside all of **Genesis** through **Malachi**. Most people who make this claim are denying our personal responsibilities under the Moral Law, which has requirements that we are to fulfill in order to receive the promises of God. Almost all of God’s promises, for the Church Age, are conditional and people who refuse to meet God’s conditions do not receive the conditional promises.

Beyond the motivation of the prior mentioned doctrinal errors, what we see all throughout the “New Testament” are quotes from the “Old Testament” which are the basis for the doctrine found in the “New Testament”. (There are over 25,000 Old Testament references on my web site [ljc1611kiv.com], which deals almost exclusively with the New Testament. These references show the Old Testament basis for doctrines found in the New Testament.) Therefore, if all of **Genesis** through **Malachi** is done away with, then we have no basis for the doctrine of the “New Testament”. That is what these false religions are after. They want to claim all of the blessings and promises of God while denying our personal responsibilities in the ongoing personal relationship with God which is the true basis of the “New Testament”. Such claims are lies from devils.

3. Parables

On the ljc1611kjb.com site are Tables of parables which are more complete, and more accurate, than any similar reference work found elsewhere. Please reference those Tables as you study this subject within your Bible.

Bible parables are often defined as: 'an earthly story with a heavenly meaning'. Most of the Bible is true accounts, such as what is reported in the Gospels. Devils get good people to claim that true accounts are stories so that people feel justified by ignoring the true accounts and the warnings contained within them. However, while the stories in the parables might have happened, and are pretty much believable as possibly happening even if exaggerated, they, in fact, are not true accounts of what actually happened. They tell us what could have happened so that we can understand what will happen in the spiritual reality if the attitudes and actions of the story are spiritually true in our own personal life. To a large extent, parables give us warnings even when they contain promises from God.

Most of the time, but not always, parables use symbolic language. Symbols must be understood within the context where they are found since they do not always have the same meanings every place where the symbolic words are found within the Bible. For example, there are times when the word "water" just means the basic liquid of life. However, at times the word "water" is used symbolically for spiritual cleansing. Then, in **John 3**, the word "water" is used symbolically for physical birth. Therefore, it is critical for people to understand the context where a parable is found in order to get the correct meaning of the parable.

Parables use symbolic language to teach some people while leading others into error. Jesus used parables to hide the truth from lost and carnal people while revealing truth only to saved people who maintain their relationship with God. Only God's Holy Spirit can reveal the spiritual truth to the saved person (**Matthew 13:11-17**). In addition, we read, several places, that Jesus said: "Who hath ears to hear, let him hear". That means that if you can hear the spiritual meaning then listen to the spiritual lesson. Many people reject a spiritual lesson because they are concentrating on the physical. **Matthew 12:46-50; Mark 3:31-35** and **Luke 8:19-21** tell us about the mother and brethren of Jesus showing up and wanting to interrupt His ministry so that they could talk to Him. Jesus responded by saying that His true family was not His physical family but His spiritual family. We also read, in the Bible, that the people of the home town of Jesus rejecting His doctrine, in spite of all of the miracles that He did, because they saw Him growing up and saw that His physical family were just like them. Thus, people who judged Jesus by physical means did not understand Who He really was and they could not understand the spiritual messages that He taught. However, those who accepted Him as 'God in Human flesh', and sought God's help to understand spiritual messages, were able to understand the truth that he taught through parables. Therefore, we see a division between saved and spiritually maturing people as opposed to others and the division is based upon their willingness to receive spiritual help in order to understand spiritual truth.

This division is why Jesus taught in parables. We are all responsible for finding and obeying God's truth. We will all be judged for our level of obedience or disobedience. Those people who spiritually mature will be able to learn and obey God's truth. They will be rewarded for their obedience. However, those people who remain lost or carnal will not be able to learn and obey God's truth. They will be punished for their disobedience.

There are several different definitions for the word "parable" found in different dictionaries. Some dictionaries concentrate on the Biblical usage of this word and some include non-Biblical usage of the word. Some dictionaries include broad interpretation of the word to include any 'similitude' or figure or speech which provides a comparison between what is said and other circumstances in order to teach a truth about the other circumstance. For example, the definition of 'an earthly story with a heavenly meaning' tells us that it includes any story set within the Earthly context which is meant to convey a truth about the spiritual reality so that the listener is to consider the meaning given in the Earthly story and then apply that meaning to a spiritual context.

With that written, we need to realize the difference between a Bible story and a Bible account. The problem is due to many people calling Bible accounts stories. Now, many of those people are good people and preachers or teachers who have been deceived. However, when someone tells you that you have been deceived, especially about the Bible, then you have a responsibility to personally investigate and verify what the Bible truth is.

Imagine that you have a savings account at the bank and the bank reduced the record of how much money you had by half. And, when you complained, the bank said that the record was only a story which they could change when it was convenient for them. Therefore, they claim that you had no basis for a complaint. Or, imagine that you had a loan for something like a car and the bank doubled your debt on the basis that what you owed was just a story that they could change when it was convenient. Now consider that **Matthew 7:2** says: "For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged: and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again." If you insist that God's accurate Bible accounts are 'only stories' and believe that you can change them at your convenience, then you are daring God to have someone do the same to your financial accounts. And, before you ignore this warning, look up identity theft on the internet and see how much trouble victims of such had getting their accounts straightened out.

With that warning written, consider the true Bible account in **Luke 16:19-31**. We can know that this is a true Bible account because Jesus names Lazarus in it. No parable, which is a Bible story, names specific people. Bible deniers claim that this true Bible account is only a story because they want to deny the true warnings about Hell. Now, when you have an argument about what the Bible truly says, one thing to consider is the type of people on either side of the argument and their motivations for their arguments. In this case, on one side we have Jesus warning people about the very real possibility of their going to Hell. On the other side you have Bible deniers serving the wishes of devils who want people to go to Hell. You choose which side to believe and if you insist upon being a Biblical fool then you will reap the punishment of a fool.

Now, in the Bible we have parables such as the "sower" who is spreading "seed" on the Earthly ground (**Luke 8**). In the explanation given by Jesus, the "sower" represents anyone who is giving Bible truth to other people and the "seed" represents the "word of God" which is "sown" in the hearts of men. The different types of ground, in the parable, represent different attitudes of heart which men have when they hear the "word of God". With that written, we can say that pretty much everyone agrees on these symbolic meanings because the Bible literally gives them to us. The problem is that there are four different types of "ground" ('conditions of heart') and while people agree with the meaning of two of them, they disagree about the meaning of two of the types of "ground" ('conditions of heart'). In addition, while people concentrate on four (4) kinds of ground, they ignore the truth that three types of results are produced. The seed on the "wayside" produced nothing. The seed on the "good ground" produced fruit ("new life"). The seed on the other two types of ground produced plants ("outward evidence of religion"), but no fruit (no "new life"). The problem that we end up with is that the Bible tells us that God gives rewards or punishment based upon what we produce. Thus, there are three different results from God. However, everyone is taught that God rewards the type of heart, of which there are four (4), and that there are only two possible results from God: saved or lost, with anyone who is saved receiving all possible results. Therefore, religious people argue about what results are received by the people who produce the third type of result.

Jesus clearly explains that the "seed" which falls "by the wayside" represents the hearts of lost people. Also, He explains that the "seed" which falls on "good ground" and produces fruit represents the hearts of saved people who are serving God. However, people want to argue about the people who "received seed among the thorns" and about the people who "received the seed into stony places". Some people argue that these two groups represent saved people and some argue that they represent lost people. This is because people have been taught that all people are divided into two groups: the saved and the lost. While this is true after people die, God divides people into three groups while they are alive. And, these three groups of living people match the three results produced by people in the parable.

The truth is that God divides people who are still alive into three groups. **Revelation** calls them the “hot”, the “cold” and the “lukewarm”. Peter calls the same groups the “godly”, the “ungodly” and the “unjust” (**2Peter**). The “hot” / “godly” are saved people who live a life which testifies that they are saved. The “cold” / “ungodly” are lost people who live a life which testifies that they are lost. However, the “lukewarm” / “unjust” are people who claim to be saved but who live a life which testifies that they are lost. While most people understand that the “cold” / “ungodly” people go to Hell, and the “hot” / “godly” people go the Heaven and are rewarded, people have been confused by the many lies about the results received by the “lukewarm” / “unjust” are people.

Within the context of the ‘Parable of the Sower’, we have the ‘Parable of the Wheat and Tares’ (**Matthew 13**). Therefore, the two parables are related and the second parable is given to help us understand the first parable.

In the ‘Parable of the Wheat and Tares’, we see that the “wheat” represents the truly saved, while the “tares” represents the lost who claim to be saved. In this parable, we are told that we cannot tell the difference between the wheat and the tares until harvest time and that God’s angels will separate the two at that time (time of death). Thus, the context makes it clear that we cannot tell if the people represented by those who “received seed among the thorns” and those who “received the seed into stony places” are truly saved or truly lost. Thus, we end up with people arguing about what they cannot truly know and trying to claim that they know what only God knows.

The lesson being that we need to be careful about anything which is revealed with symbolic language such as parables. We need to be very careful to consider the context where such is presented within the word of God. We also need to avoid the temptation of our flesh to claim knowledge which we do not really have because such a claim fills us with pride and brings the judgment of God upon us.

On the ljc1611kjv.com site is a [Tables of Parables in the Old Testament](#) and a [Tables of Parables in the New Testament](#). The [Tables of Parables in the New Testament](#) has references to where these parables are dealt with in the various [Book Studies](#) on that site. The [Book Studies](#) explain the parables in detail and provide complete consideration of the context. These are there to help the Bible student find, and understand, Biblical parables. In addition, The Addendum contains the explanation of two parables in the Message called [Pounds and Talents](#). It is there to help the student to understand how to understand parables.

The main thing to keep in mind, about parables in the Gospels, is that Jesus said: “And the disciples came, and said unto him, Why speakest thou unto them in parables? He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given. For whosoever hath, to him shall be given, and he shall have more abundance: but whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken away even that he hath. Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand. And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive: For this people's heart is waxed gross, and *their* ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with *their* eyes, and hear with *their* ears, and should understand with *their* heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them. But blessed *are* your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear.” (**Matthew 13:10-16**). Thus, there will be many wrong interpretations of parables which come from lost people or which come from people with only a partial understanding of the spiritual lesson provided. Therefore, the Bible student must be very careful in what they chose to believe about Bible parables.

Please see the note for [Galatians 4:24](#) about the claim that an allegory can be different from a parable. As explained there, the argument is a waste of time.

In [Luke 11:5-8](#), we read the parable called '*The Friend at Midnight*'. This parable is also an allegory. It does not identify a specific historical event but it uses a common event in the lives of people in that society and that time. So, technically, it was not an actual historical event. However, historically, it was such a common cultural event that the listeners of the time had no problem relating to it and, probably, could even think of a person that it was an actual event in their life. Now, since most people who argue these types of technicalities fail to make the distinction between an actual specific historical event and a historically common

cultural event, they are being inaccurate even while they strain at a gnat ([Matthew 23:24](#)). Simply put, the arguments about the difference between an allegory and a parable are a distraction from learning the true doctrine of the Bible and can be used to justify doctrinal error. Yes, there can be an argument which is based upon an incomplete analysis of the two words, but it really is not worth pursuing if you truly want to learn the word of God.

Please also see the note for [Mark 3:22](#) for a couple of good Bible definitions for the word parable. In addition, [Matthew 13:2-23](#); [Mark 4:1-20](#) and [Luke 8:4-15](#) gives us '*the parable of the sower*' along with the teaching that Jesus gave so that we could know how to understand parables. In addition, [Mark 4:24-25](#) warns us to: "Take heed what ye hear" and the matching account in Luke warns us also to: "Take heed how ye hear". The notes to those sentences give further doctrine on the proper attitude which is required in order to understand parables. In addition, [Matthew 13:10-17](#) gives us the explanation from Jesus for the question of: "Why speakest thou unto them in parables?" The doctrine in these references is critical to properly understanding parables. Further, the notes for the mentioned sentences contain a lot of doctrine and Bible references to help the Bible student know how to properly understand all parables.

4. Miracles

On the ljc1611kjb.com site are Tables of miracles which are more complete, and more accurate, than anything found elsewhere. Please reference those Tables as you study this subject within your Bible.

In the Gospels we find several places where Jesus healed many diseased people and cast out devils from people who were possessed by devils (**Matthew 4:24; 8:16-17; 15:30-31; 21:14; Mark 1:32-34, 39; 3:10-11; Luke 4:40-41; 6:18-19;13:32**). Then there are other places where we are told that Jesus healed many diseased people, but it does not mention Him casting out devils (**Matthew 4:23; 9:35; 12:15;14:14; 14:35-36;15:30;19:2; Luke 5:15; 6:17-18**). In addition, we find several places, in the Gospels, where it is reported that Jesus did a particular miracle. When we read about a specific miracle, it is critical to consider the context where the account is presented. These specific accounts are there as a physical example of the spiritual doctrine being presented in the surrounding context. The opening note of this book mentioned the importance of keeping anything referenced in the word of God within the context where it is found. This is very applicable to understanding miracles.

In the section called Physical Reality Truth, the truth was explained that this physical reality is a sub-set of the spiritual reality and that God created the physical reality from the spiritual reality. That is one of the reasons why spiritual beings, in the spiritual reality, can affect the physical reality but our acts in the physical reality cannot force any change in the spiritual reality. (If this does not make sense to you, learn the Mathematical concept of sets and subsets. The laws of Math are some of the “precepts” that God put into creation and since God does not change, they are always kept within the Bible.) In addition, that section gave the suggestion to consider this physical reality as God’s virtual reality, which is like a multi-player video game. The difference is that everything we do here in this physical reality affects our everlasting destiny and everlasting rewards or punishment that will last for more than 1,000 years while the results of man-created video games (usually) have no lasting effect. The reason why our attitudes and actions affect our everlasting results, but do not affect anything else that is spiritual, is that God uses our attitudes and actions to judge us personally.

With that in mind, we can consider how a hacker can change the rules which are imposed for a given function within the computer environment such as the multi-player game. Likewise, spiritual beings can ‘hack’ the rules of this physical reality and do miracles which go outside of the rules of the physical reality. For example, Satan instantly transported Jesus to the top of the Temple. That goes against lots of rules in this physical reality such as ‘the law of gravity’.

Now, please understand that I am not doctrinally stating that this literally happens but that this is a method for understanding how spiritual beings, such as God, angels and devils, can do miracles. Please also realize that the Bible says that all of those spiritual beings can do miracles. So, it is not a question if they can do miracles but how they do the miracles. And, I am only offering a way for people to understand without claiming that this way is absolute doctrinal truth.

Now, one thing to keep in mind is that devils can only do what God allows them to do. God allows devils to do miracles for many reasons including supporting a lie so that the lost have a real choice between accepting the truth and serving God or believing a lie and serving some devil. If the lies were so obviously wrong that only a fool would believe the lie, then people would have no true choice and would be forced to accept the truth, which would negate our having a free will.

With the prior in mind, we will lightly consider one account of a miracle by Jesus in order to understand the importance of keeping the context in mind when trying to understand the miracle. In **John 2:1-11** we have the account of Jesus doing His first miracle. Now we have two fiercely debated doctrinal teachings which are based upon this account. Neither doctrinal teaching has been accepted as truth by everyone. While people who claim that each of these doctrinal teachings are absolute truth, they do so in order to support other doctrines which they claim to believe are true. And, while the proponents strongly support their doctrine, most people realize that there are problems with each of these fiercely debated doctrinal teachings

The fact is that both positions have some doctrinal error and those doctrinal errors can be shown with true meaning of scriptural references. So, while each side can point to the error of the other side, neither side can prove their position is true because they cannot answer the criticism from the opposite side. This is because both doctrinal positions are half-truth errors and the real truth is something that few consider.

Now, in order to find the truth of this miracle, we need to keep in mind the context of the miracle. In particular, **John 2:11** is critical and it tells us: "This beginning of miracles did Jesus in Cana of Galilee, and manifested forth his glory; and his disciples believed on him." With that verse in mind, we can look at the two popular half-truth explanations of this miracle.

One side argues that what Jesus turned the water into was alcoholic wine because the context of the account does not allow for an interpretation of non-alcoholic grape juice. The other side argues that, since alcoholic wine is a type of corruption and that Jesus never provides any form of corruption, it cannot be alcoholic wine and, therefore, must be non-alcoholic grape juice. Both sides are proving the problem with the answer from the other side and claiming their answer as the default answer because it is the only one left. However, the true answer is one that neither side considered. And, since there is another answer, both sides are wrong to claim that their default answer is the only answer left.

Both sides are only considering what men can produce within the limits of the rules of this physical reality. Neither side considers that a miracle is spiritual in source and does not have to be limited by the rules of this physical reality. A miracle is done for spiritual reasons and can use the things from the spiritual reality in order to accomplish the desired result. That is what happened in this instance and that is what both sides of the doctrinal fight failed to consider.

Both sides are only looking at what men can produce and ignorant the fact that Jesus said that He would drink "the fruit of the vine... in the kingdom of God" (**Matthew 26:29; Mark 14:25**). Therefore, there is a spiritual "fruit of the vine", which belongs to "Jesus" as the "bridegroom" (**Matthew 9:15; 25:1,5-6,10; Mark 2:19-20; Luke 5:34-35; John 2:9; John 3:29**) of the "marriage supper of the Lamb" (**Revelation 19:9**). That spiritual "fruit of the vine" avoids all of the objections by everyone, fulfills all of the symbolism found in the account, and is the seventh ('completion') form of the spiritual "fruit of the vine". In addition, the spiritual drink from Heaven would "manifested forth his glory" so that "his disciples believed on him." (**John 2:11**). (Please see the notes for the related verses within the Book Study on the Gospel of John, on ljhc1611kjv.com, for all of the related details.)

The main point of this example is that the true Bible student needs to keep everything from the Bible in context in order to avoid doctrinal error. It is better to be humble and honestly admit not being able to explain something in the Bible than to make up a wrong answer because the pride of a self-proclaimed 'expert' demands such action. This is true for miracles along with everything else which comes from the Bible.

With that miracle covered at a high level (see the Book Study for the more detailed examination of it), we will look at another miracle in order to understand the application to us today.

In **Acts 3** and **Acts 4**, we read the account of Peter and John healing a man who was "lame from his mother's womb was carried, whom they laid daily at the gate of the temple which is called Beautiful (and) above forty years old" (**Acts 3:2** and **Acts 4:22**). First of all, this man had, obviously, waited a long time for his miracle. There are a lot of religious liars who claim that God has no choice. God must heal instantly when they lay hands on someone. Without going into the details of their cons, I will write to beware of such. Yes, some of such people can do actual miracles but that does not mean they are using the power of the God of the Bible and trusting the power of a devil can bring eternal destruction. I personally have had several times when medical doctors said that I had 'undeniable multiple miracles'. And, these brought glory to God while refused to see someone claimed to be a 'faith healer'. Therefore, I have personal experience to base my writing on.

Returning to our account, this (miracle in **Acts**) happened after Jesus returned to Heaven. In **Mark 3:14-15**, we read: "And he (Jesus) ordained twelve, that they should be with him, and that he might send them forth to preach,

and to have power to heal sicknesses, and to cast out devils". Thus, this was not the first experience for Peter and John but it is the first reported experience of their doing a miracle after Jesus returned to Heaven. Thus, it becomes an example of what to expect during the 'Church Age'.

With that in mind, we see, once again, that we need to consider the context. **Acts 3:8-11** says: "And he leaping up stood, and walked, and entered with them into the temple, walking, and leaping, and praising God. And all the people saw him walking and praising God: And they knew that it was he which sat for alms at the Beautiful gate of the temple: and they were filled with wonder and amazement at that which had happened unto him. And as the lame man which was healed held Peter and John, all the people ran together unto them in the porch that is called Solomon's, greatly wondering." So now, turn on your brain and think about this. You have a bunch of people in the Temple (church) who are trying to impress everyone with how holy and proper and spiritual they are. The religious leaders complained to Jesus when His disciples were loudly praising God outside, at the time that He entered Jerusalem triumphantly. Therefore, they would have created an environment where quiet and sophisticated were encouraged as proper behavior in church.

In addition, **Acts 4:1-2** says: "And as they spake unto the people, the priests, and the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees, came upon them, being grieved". Now, what they were "grieved" about was different than what we are seeing here. However, we need to consider that the religious leaders had armed soldiers available to enforce what they considered to be proper behavior and this man was acting in the opposite of 'proper behavior'. Read again **Acts 3:8-11** and realize that this guy disturbed everybody in the Temple so much that "all the people ran together unto them in the porch that is called Solomon's". This means that this guy was not the least concerned with what was considered to be 'proper behavior'. He was willing to be persecuted by the religious leaders who had armed guards and a jail to enforce what they considered to be 'proper behavior'. Therefore, the man who received the miracle was willing to praise God and do so to the extent that he interrupted the entire Temple. And, he refused to be intimidated.

Notice that **Acts 4:3** says: "And they laid hands on them, and put them in hold unto the next day: for it was now eventide". Then, **Acts 4:14** says: "And beholding the man which was healed standing with them, they could say nothing against it". Therefore, this man went to jail with the apostles and stayed by their side even willing to share their punishment for what they preached. As a result, what we see here is a man who glorified God and was willing to cause a ruckus no matter what anyone else thought. He also was willing to stand by his preacher even if it meant going to jail and possibly being beaten or worse. He did everything in his power to draw a crowd of lost religious people so that Peter and John could preach the Gospel. Now, after considering what he actually did and the attitude of gratitude that he actually displayed, consider what most people actually do after God blesses them. You're lucky to hear them mention it to even a few friends.

Consider that we read about Paul giving his testimony several times and he refused to be intimidated by his audience (**2Corinthians 11:10**). What we actually see is that God gives miracles to people who will use those experiences to bring glory and honor to God and who are willing to offend people who object to God getting glory from the testimony of men. This man disturbed the entire attitude and all of the people in the Temple and then stuck around and was arrested with the apostles. Paul went out and risked his life, and beatings, and dangerous circumstances and more. So, if you're not going to publicly give God glory and, at most, only lightly mention your miracle to a few people, why should God give you a miracle? What's in it for God? Seriously think about that and we will move on.

We already saw that this man was "above forty years old" (**Acts 4:22**). And, while there were many beggars many places in the land, we saw that he was "lame from his mother's womb was carried, whom they laid daily at the gate of the temple which is called Beautiful" (**Acts 3:2**). Therefore, he spent his life doing what he could to worship God. Think about this. If that was not his attitude then he would not have sought the Temple every day of his life. In addition, he would not have reacted in as extreme of a fashion as he did unless praising God was already his practice. Therefore, the next thing we see, about someone receiving a miracle from God, was that he was faithfully served God, to the best of his abilities, and doing so for years regardless of the circumstances that God put him into. Our attitude has a major impact upon God's decision to give us a miracle.

Next, in **Acts 3:12**, we see that Peter took advantage of the crowd that this man drew. However, when we look back at this man, we see someone who was willing to do whatever was required to draw a crowd. We also saw that he was willing to sacrifice in order to serve God. After all, if he had kept his mouth shut, he could have continued to beg until he found some other way to get money. However, after his ruckus, his begging was over even though he did not know any other way to get money. What's more, he stuck with the preachers no matter how long it took and no matter what the consequences. Imagine world-known religious leaders criticizing and attacking a preacher. How many of their people would find another place to be? In other words, this man had a proven attitude of faithful personal sacrifice and personal service. How many people looking for a miracle have the same proven testimony?

What we have seen throughout this discussion of an example miracle is that there is no guarantee of receiving a miracle from God. However, we also saw that this man had an attitude and action which proved to God that God could get greater glory and honor, and could increase the spread of the Gospel, by giving this man a miracle. So, the number one question is: what will God receive if He gives you a miracle?

There is one other main point to cover, related to miracles, before we move on. The God deniers try to come up with ways to explain miracles while staying within the limits of the rules of this physical reality. They, obviously, take the miracle out of context and try to explain it within another context and claim that if they can do this for a couple of miracles then that proves that no miracle required supernatural power. They also claim that any miracle that they have trouble explaining really did not require supernatural power, they just need more time to explain how it can be done within the limits of the rules of this physical reality. (One example is Jesus giving sight to someone who was born blind [**John 9**]. The God deniers claim that artificial eyes will be created in the future, and match that miracle. This ignores the fact that Jesus did not have artificial eyes, nor the hospital required to replace natural eyes.) It should be obvious that this argument is a desperate attempt to deny the obvious truth that miracles exceed the limits of this physical reality. It does not matter what advancements are made in medicine and surgeries, no one is ever going to be able to spit into someone's eyes and make the blind able to see (**Mark 8:22-25**). And, as explained more than once within this book, we must keep Bible accounts within the context where they are found in order to receive the truth. When miracles are kept within the context of where they are reported, and also considered within the context of every accounting when reported more than once, we see that all miracles required supernatural spiritual power in order to do what is outside of the limits of the rules of this physical reality.

5. The Gospels

The Gospels tell us about the time that Jesus lived in this physical reality. They give us four different perspectives of the events that happened at that time. Matthew gives us the perspective of Jesus fulfilling the requirements of Mosaic law. Matthew started out as a tax collector, which is a government employee. Therefore, his profession made him concerned about legal concerns. Mark tells us that Jesus is the example servant. Mark was a servant to preachers all of his life. Luke was a physician and he gives us the perspective that Jesus was a literal physical man. John was "the beloved disciple", and true Biblical "love" is spiritual. As such, John tells us that Jesus was the spiritual Son of God. Thus, we have four different views of the life of Jesus.

Now, if four people went to an event, such as a fair, which took more than one day, and afterwards, you asked each what happened, you would receive four different reports. It is not that any of the people are liars but that each notice different things and even when they report the same event, they view the event from different perspectives. That is what we have in the Gospels. Yet, the God deniers refuse to accept this simple truth and look for problems and conflicts when there truly are none. In addition, they use wrong methods to interpret the Bible and when their own wrong methods produce conflicts, they blame God and God's perfect word for their own errors. I am not just writing an opinion but have published a more detailed systematic analysis of the Bible than you will find anywhere else in the world. In it I prove that there are NO errors in the KJV-1611 if you use God's way to interpret God's word. With that written, and without going into all of the detailed evidence, I am assuring the reader that they can trust what God wrote and preserved unto them. The people who claim otherwise are either deceived or are ministers of Satan deliberately lying about God and His word for evil purposes.

Once the reader accepts a proper attitude about the Bible and the Gospels, we can start to look at them and understand what God is telling us in those Gospels.

In the beginning of the Gospels, in general, we see God fulfilling Old Testament prophecies and promises made to His people: the Jews. We see Jesus starting out preaching the "Gospel of the Kingdom" and offering the "kingdom" to the Jews. However, they were not willing to accept it with the Son God in charge as their "King". The religious leaders wanted a figurehead king with them running the kingdom their own selfish sinful way. Thus, they rejected Jesus as their true God given "King". In addition, the people wanted their familiar comfortable religion, even if it was wrong. Therefore, they also rejected Jesus as their true God given "King". This is when Jesus started the church (the spiritual conception of the spiritual life which is in God's spiritually alive church). Jesus then chose twelve (12) disciples to become His future apostles. He also gave the 'Sermon on the Mount' (**Matthew chapters 5-7** and **Luke 6:20-40**) as the basic doctrine that true Biblical "Christians" are expected to follow. After this, Jesus started teaching in parables to hide the truth from the lost religious people who rejected Him while revealing the truth to true believers.

Most of the Jews were not willing to think for themselves nor were they willing to have the responsibility of an ongoing personal relationship with God. Therefore, they also rejected Jesus as their true God-given "Saviour" who provided God's life only to those people who accepted an ongoing personal relationship with God. Most of the Jews, and most people of today, chose the comfort of a familiar religion which they did not have to think about. That religion promised blessings from God through an indirect relationship which required very little in a personal way. And, while many people condemn the Jews, the fact is that most people of today, who claim to be saved, also react the exact same way. Their religion is not an ongoing personal relationship with God but is an indirect relationship whereby someone else has the responsibility of dealing directly with God.

Thus, we can see a certain message wove throughout all of the Gospels. The Gospels tell us that Jesus was / is a literal physical man Who is also 'God in human flesh'. The Gospels also tell us many doctrinal truths including the requirement for us to make a personal commitment of using our current life in this flesh to serve God like Jesus showed us to do. The Gospels also teach us that if we act in the same unthinking way in which the Jews acted, then we should expect to receive the same condemnation that they received. And, in fact, we should expect to receive a greater condemnation because we have the clear lessons of all of the

Gospels, and of all of the New Testament, as well as having access to God's indwelling Holy Spirit. The Jews did not have these things. Therefore, we have the "greater condemnation" (**James 3**). As a result, one of the main messages from the Bible is: 'Turn on your brain and think for yourself instead of blindly following some lost and blind self-proclaimed religious leader'.

With this basic concept in mind, we can look at the similarities and differences between the four Gospels (**Matthew, Mark, Luke and John**). This is often called the 'Harmony of the Gospels'.

Webster's 1828 Dictionary has, as a definition of the word "harmony": 'The just adaptation of parts to each other, in any system or composition of things, intended to form a connected whole; as the harmony of the universe.' While other people can argue for different applications of this word, this definition suffices for a basic definition of the word and helps us to understand the true meaning of the phrase 'Harmony of the Gospels'.

Many people have wrong ideas about the four Gospels (**Matthew, Mark, Luke and John**), and have wrong ideas about what is meant by the phrase: 'Harmony of the Gospels'. One such wrong idea is that the Gospels are harmonized in time sequence. However, the early life and early ministry of Jesus is not documented sufficiently for us to specify the time sequence of incidents reported. What we can do is match up (harmonize) different Gospel reports of given incidents. Even then, there can be problems. How many of us do the same thing more than once? How many of us realize that there will be certain details which will not be the same every time that we do a certain thing? This common occurrence is the basis for some God deniers claiming that there are errors or conflicts in the Gospel accounts. There were times that Jesus did certain things more than once and one Gospel account reported one of those events while another Gospel account reported a different, but similar, event. As a result, there were certain details which were not the same and God deniers use that as a basis for claiming that there are conflicts instead of accepting that there were two different, but similar, events.

While I could go on with explaining all of the errors made by God deniers, I will simply write that those details are in the Book Studies on the various Gospels which can be found at ljc17611kjv.com. And, the main thing which the reader needs to understand is that God demands that people trust Him, and His word which He wrote and preserved for us. We need to stop listening to ministers of devils who try to blame God's perfect word for their own errors and their deliberate attempts to deceive people. With that written, we will proceed with things which should help the reader to find the truth of the Bible Gospel accounts.

While none of the Gospels were written in an absolute time sequence, all of them contain accounts which are in a time sequence. Therefore, time sequences apply for the relating of given incidents but cannot be applied on a larger scale within a given Gospel account. That is: some parts, within the Gospel accounts, are in a time sequence but none of the Gospel accounts are completely in a time sequence.

Next, the true definition of the word "harmony" is to be applied when we consider the Gospels. That is: when two or more Gospel writers report the same incident, we can use the different perspectives to "harmonize" our incident and get a better understanding of what actually occurred.

Each Gospel writer wrote his gospel to present a particular perspective of Jesus Christ and His ministry. Within each Gospel, the author had several parts which combined to present the whole picture which he wished to present. Each part presented a particular point which the author wanted to make and that point supported the whole view that he was giving to us. In addition, each Gospel author reported various incidents which support the point that he is making at that time. Further, each of these points could cover more than one chapter. For example, in **Matthew's** account, the 'Sermon on the Mount' required three (3) chapters to present. Thus, one of the most important things to do is to pay attention to the context and realize the point which the particular author is making. If he is reporting an incident which is also reported in another Gospel account, then better understanding can be reached by comparing the different accounts. However, the reader needs to remember that each author is reporting the incident to support the point which he is making and his point is often different from the point being made by the other author. Therefore, while two, or more,

authors might be reporting the same incident, each is probably trying to make a different point. As a result, there will probably be different emphasis even while two authors are reporting the same incident.

Within each part of each gospel, each author presented accounts of events and those accounts are, typically, in time sequence. However, if the last event of one part occurred later in time than the first event of the next part, the author had no problem with the time overlap because none of the authors were trying to give us a time-sequence history. Instead, they presented different pictures of Jesus Christ and His ministry and their main concern is presenting the complete picture for the point that they are making.

For example, think about four people going to an event and, afterwards, telling you what happened. Typically, such accounts are not presented in absolute time sequence but each person relates things which were important to that person and relates them in the order of importance to the speaker. In addition, each speaker will relate something that happened but was not important enough to other speakers to relate the event. Further, even when two speakers relate the same event, they often present different perspectives of the same event. That is what we truly have in the four Gospels.

An example of the Gospels not being in absolute time sequence can be found in the **Gospel of Luke**. The angel Gabriel talks with Mary (mother of Jesus) in **Luke 1:26-38** about the birth of Jesus. As part of this account, Mary was also told that her elderly cousin, Elisabeth, was also pregnant with John the Baptist and Mary went to be with her. Now, think about the probable conditions of that day and place. Mary probably had to walk for more than a day to get there. Elisabeth was six (6) months pregnant and Mary stayed for three (3) months. Next, in **Luke 1:39-56**, we read about the visit of Mary with Elisabeth ending with the fact that Mary then returned home. Then, in **Luke 1:57-79** (later in the chapter), Luke tells us the events of the birth of John the Baptist and what all of the women, who were there for the birth, had to say. Now, ask any mother to consider the conditions at that time and place. Relate that Elisabeth was too old to have a baby, but was still pregnant. Relate that her young cousin Mary, who was also pregnant, probably walked a couple of days to make the visit and found Elisabeth six (6) months into her pregnancy and then stayed three (3) more months. Then ask the mother if she believes that Mary would go home just before the birth with no reason for her to leave at that time. Yet, if we claim that the **Gospel of Luke** is in absolute time sequence, which is what must have happened.

It should be obvious to any reasonable person that events did not happen in that time sequence. Therefore, the only possible conclusion is that the **Gospel of Luke** is not in absolute time sequence. Luke first reported the details of the visit by Mary and then reported the details of the birth and the fact that the birth happened in time before Mary left did not dictate that Luke interrupt one account to provide the other account. Luke was not presenting incidents in an absolute time sequence but in an order that allows the reader to understand the details which were related to the particular incident which he was reporting.

With that truth in mind, we must conclude that the critics of the Bible don't care how reasonable, or unreasonable, their arguments are. They only wish to destroy faith in the "word of God". And, criticism of the Gospels is high on their actions as they try to destroy true faith. Therefore, the true Bible student needs to be careful to avoid the writings, and teachings, of all such critics.

Moving on, the Gospels by **Matthew Mark** and **Luke** are called 'synoptic' because the details in these gospels are often different views of the same event or are views of similar events. The **Gospel of John** mainly covers different things than those other three gospels and, while there are some events which are in all four gospels, the majority of what is in the **Gospel of John** is mainly found only in that gospel.

The Gospel of John mainly concentrates on the teaching by Jesus to His twelve (12) disciples whom He planned to make apostles. He gave them much private teaching that Jesus did not give to other people. In addition, this teaching was typically done when Jesus was alone with the twelve. In contrast, the three 'synoptic' gospels (**Matthew, Mark and Luke**) often cover the same, or similar, events as the other two 'synoptic' gospel writers present. The three 'synoptic' Gospels also cover the teaching by Jesus but they relate His teaching to all men including the lost religious leaders, the repentant sinners, non-Jews and other

categories of people. Thus, their accounts are more dealing with the public ministry of Jesus while John concentrates on the private ministry by Jesus. In addition, the three 'synoptic' Gospels tell us more about the actions of Jesus than John does. They emphasize how the actions supported the doctrines while John relates more of the spiritual reasoning for the doctrines.

On ljc17611kjb.com are a couple of Doctrinal Studies such as the [Significant Gospel Events](#) and the [Gospel Time Sequences](#). These are reference works and presents things like what the time sequence really was and references to where the accounts of those events are presented in the various Gospels. In addition, it gives references to connect where a particular event is reported in more than one Gospel. Further, other types of references are provided. These Doctrinal Studies are incomplete but are still more complete and more accurate than almost any other such reference work. Within the [Significant Gospel Events](#) are categories of: [Miracles](#); [Harmony](#); [Significant Events Reported Only Once Within the Gospels](#); [Parables](#); [Promises](#); [Prophecies](#); [Prophecy Fulfilled](#); [Non-Prophecy Godly Knowledge](#); [Minor Titles of the Son of God](#); [Jesus and the Ten Commandments](#); [Jesus and Devils](#). Within the [Gospel Time Sequences](#) are categories of: [Sequence of Early Events in the life of Jesus](#); [Sequence of the Betrayal of Jesus](#); [Sequence of the Crucifixion of Jesus](#); [Sequence of the Resurrection of Jesus](#); [Appearances of Jesus Christ After the Resurrection](#). These reference works, and others, are presented to help the serious Bible Student study the word of God for themselves. They can be reached from the [Doctrines Menu Item](#) on ljc1611kjb.com.

A truth that was presented for [Miracles](#) (above) is also applicable to many other things in the Gospels. What might appear to be conflicts in the details of events reported might have been different perspectives of the same event or might actually be the reporting of similar, but different, events. For example, the 'Sermon on the Mount', in **Matthew's** account, required three (3) chapters to present. In **Luke's** account, we see it presented in only part of one chapter (**Luke 6:17-40**). This message was after Jesus started His church (see below for this detail) and tells us His basic requirements for a saved person to become a true Biblical "Christian". Now, once we understand the purpose of this message, it becomes reasonable that Jesus presented it more than once. In addition, every preacher / speaker knows that they can present the same message multiple times and, unless they are in a play with dictated words, no two times of presenting the message will use the exact same words in every detail. Thus, what we have is an example of what should be considered to be common when we compare the Gospels. There are accounts of the same event given from different perspectives and there are accounts of different, but similar, events.

The critic of the "word of God" doesn't care about truth, context or circumstances. He only cares about people believing that he is a greater authority than the men that God chose to write His word. The men that God chose were first-hand or second-hand witnesses to these events. They lived in the culture, lived at the time of the events, spoke the language as their native language and had many other supports to their claim of authority. However, the critic lives in a different land, different time, different culture, speaks a different language and had the audacity to claim that he knows more than eyewitnesses. I've had people literally tell me that they knew more about the doctrine that Jews were willing to die for, in the times of the Gospels and the **Books of Acts**, than the Jews living in those times and events knew. When I told them that such a claim displayed the height of arrogance and self-deception, they responded with anger.

The point of all of this is that devils have many liars deceiving people and being deceived. These deceived people, even if they are 'good godly people', are presenting "doctrines of devils" (**1Timothy 4:1**). The true Bible student needs to have faith in what God gives to them in the "word of God" (not the man authored perversions called bibles). When the Bible student finds something that appears to be a conflict, they need to recognize that the cause is their own lack of understanding. They need to seek explanation from a reliable Bible source or wait for God's "Holy Spirit" to clarify the problem for them.

One of the things to understand about the Gospels is that they present the events of the Son of God living in human flesh as an ordinary man. When God and death meet in conflict, death loses. Yet, Jesus died. Therefore, He did not die as God but as a literal physical man. He was the "Creator of the world" (**John 1:3, 10; Romans 1:25; 1Peter 4:19**). That means He was / is God. He had to lay aside His personal power and

authority as “Lord” in order to be conceived in Mary. His mother had to feed Him and change His diapers. He died as a literal physical man and the devils took Him into Hell (**Psalm 22; Ephesians 4:9-10**). God is always righteous and would not bust into the place given to the devil by Adam. However, after being taken there, Jesus took back His own power and authority as God, bound Satan and all of the devils (**Matthew 12:29; Mark 3:27**), took the “keys of Hell and death” (**Revelation 1:18**), led the Old Testament saints from “paradise” to Heaven (**Ephesians 4:8**), and rose from the dead as “Lord Jesus” (**Luke 24:3**). Thus, before and after the events of the Gospels, the Son of God held, and used, His own power as God. But during the time of the Gospels, He laid that power and authority to live as a human man like you and me. For more details on this truth, please see, on ljc17611kiv.com, the Doctrinal Study called Jesus Used the Power of the holy Ghost, and the Doctrinal Study called What Would Jesus Do? and the related sections in the Doctrinal Study called Significant Gospel Events.

While there is, obviously, much more to the Gospels than what is presented here, what has been presented should be sufficient to guide the true Bible student in their own study of Gospels. Have truth faith in what God gave you, use reliable reference material and avoid Bible critics and other who teach doctrinal error.

6. Promises of God

While there are a couple of promises from God which do not require some action by the recipients, most do require some action first. Now, some people who teach the “doctrines of devils” (**1Timothy 4:1**), claim that doing what God requires forces God to give us the promise. Other people who teach the “doctrines of devils” (**1Timothy 4:1**), teach that even our just ‘claiming’ the promise, while ignoring the requirements from God, forces God to give us the promise. Hopefully, the reader sees that these claims are lies.

God made some unconditional promises such as the promise of: “And I will establish my covenant with you; neither shall all flesh be cut off any more by the waters of a flood; neither shall there any more be a flood to destroy the earth.” (**Genesis 9:11**). Please notice that this promise is made to all people and is not a personal promise made for only one individual to receive. In addition, we see promises that God makes to His “Messiah / Christ” which do not state what He must do to receive those promises because God the Father knows that He will do as required even without God specifying the requirement. However, all of the rest of the promises, which are most of the promises in the Bible, have something which the recipient must do before receiving the promise. In addition, these promises are made to be received as individuals with some promises restricted to certain groups of people or to certain individuals. We cannot ‘claim’ a promise given to someone else.

Now, there is a popular saying that even was put into song: ‘every promise in the book is mine’. That lie leads to many doctrinal errors which cause people to doubt God and the “word of God”, when the truth is that there is no place where God makes that promise. Therefore, the failure of belief in this lie is not a failure of God or a failure of the “word of God”. The true failure is in the person who failed to verify the so-called promise and failed to verify the true source of the so-called promise. The truth is that this saying is a lie from a devil.

Moving on, the Bible tells us that God gave each of us a free will and “the gifts and calling of God *are* without repentance.” (**Romans 11:29**). This means that God will not take away our free will for any reason but God will let most people literally go to an eternity in the “lake of fire” (**Revelation 20:14-15**) before He takes away anyone’s free will. However, devils get people to sin and all sin is addictive. Therefore, devils take away peoples’ free will through enticing them to sin. Further, Satan accuses God of being like him. As a result, God makes His promises conditional. Our meeting God’s conditions doesn’t force God to keep the promise but gives God the legal evidence, which is required, to prove that Satan lies when Satan claims that God takes away our free will and ‘forces His grace on us’. Our fulfilling God’s requirement, as a free will act of faith, is God’s legal evidence against the lie of Satan. In addition, it allows God to set up one non-changing method which provides people with His promise if they act in true Biblical “faith” while denying the same to all other people.

The next thing to realize is that God always reserves the right to decide when, and exactly how, He keeps His promises. All of God’s promises are specific in general and non-specific in detail. For example, God promises that He will save all living Jews in a day when Jesus Christ returns to this Earth to rule and reign. God hides the exact date of this event and promises it will be after the “great tribulation” (**Matthew 24:21; Revelation 2:22; Revelation 7:14**) when most Jews will die. Thus, we have a specific promise to Jews in general while God reserves the right to determining when He will keep the promise and God will determine which specific Jews will receive the promise by keeping them alive while all other Jews are killed.

Another example is God’s promise that “Vengeance is mine, I will repay” (said many places in the Bible). God does not say when or how He will repay it. It may be in this world and it may be in eternity. God may repay by making the person who hurt us suffer more than what they took from us and God may repay by giving you more than they took. The best option is for God to repay us by giving us good in eternity. However, regardless of when and how God repays, it requires us to obey God’s requirement that we leave the vengeance to God and that we do so with the right attitude when we are innocent of doing wrong but another person does us wrong.

Another source of doctrinal error, which is related to the promises of God, is that people ignore whom the promise is made to. If a woman promises her husband that she will make him glad that he married her, some

other man cannot 'claim' that promise. Yet, that is what many people do with the promises of God. They try to 'claim' a promise without considering if God made that promise to them or not. When criticized for doing so, many of these people make up an excuse to justify their doing so. For example, some people claim that the church replaced the Jews and now can 'claim' the promises that God made to the Jews. However, the Jews are the 'wife of God the Father' (**Isaiah 54:5**) while the church is the "bride of Christ" (**John 3:29**). That is two different relationships with two different members of the Trinity. Therefore, the church did not replace the Jews for the promises of God.

Thus, we must see if a promise from God actually applies to us before we 'claim' it. We must fulfill God's requirements with true Biblical faith that God will keep His promise in His time and in His way.

For another example, **Galatians 3:16** says: "Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ." (This promise is found in **Genesis 12:7**.) The Jews were sure that God's promises were made to all of the physical descendants of Abraham. But, as our reference says, the promise was made only to one "seed, which is Christ". We also see this in the fact that Matthew starts his Gospel telling us that "Jesus Christ (is) the son of David (and) the son of Abraham". Then Matthew has a long list of men who fathered sons and Matthew uses the word "begat" for the act of physically fathering a son. However, in the Bible, the word "son" is used for 'someone who receives the character of the father' and this is the distinction which Matthew is making between his first sentence and his second sentence where he uses "son" in the first sentence and "begat" in the second sentence.

We also see John the Baptist make this distinction in **Matthew 3:9** and in **Luke 3:8**. Further, in **John 8:33-47**, Jesus is having a doctrinal disagreement with the Jews wherein they claim to be sons of Abraham and Jesus says that they are sons of a devil. Thus, we see that the Jews 'claimed' certain promises from God but God rejected their claim because they failed to fulfill His requirements. They thought they had fulfilled God's requirements because their religious leaders taught them doctrinal error. However, God refused to honor their 'claim'.

Therefore, we must make sure that we understand what God's true requirements are in order to receive a promise from God. We cannot just believe what some religious person says but must truly study what the Bible actually says using the guidance from God's "Holy Spirit". Once we truly understand what God requires, we must make sure that we fulfill God's requirements in order to receive the promise and we must fulfill those requirements with true Biblical faith that God will keep His promise in His time and in His way.

I have attended so-called healing services. I have also had doctors and nurses claim that I had 'undeniable multiple miracles' more than once. I will not go into the lies involved in the so-called healing services but simply write that we must pay attention to whom the people truly credit for the healing. Yes, the preacher, at the so-called healing services, gives lip-service to God but, afterwards, everyone is talking about the preacher. However, any time that I received true healing, everyone gave the glory to God. That is a true Biblical requirement for receiving any promise from God. We must make sure that everyone knows that only God kept the promise and nothing that we did forced God to keep His promise.

The next thing to realize is that, when we see a "whosoever" in the Bible, we have a promise that anyone can 'claim'. However, devils hate all saved and want everyone to curse God. Therefore, lots of people say that such promises are received by doing something different than God requires. Then, when people don't receive the promise because they failed to fulfill God's requirement, devils have people claim that God and the Bible are not reliable.

A simple example is that there are at least 15 places in the Bible which tell us to "call upon the name of the Lord". When we truly do this, we recognize the power and authority associated with His name of "Lord". That is the role of God which deals with law, government and related matters such as judgment. When we "call upon the name of the Lord", we are accepting His right to make laws telling us what to do, His right to judge our obedience or disobedience and His right to punish the disobedient.

Now, devils have preachers tell people to: 'ask Jesus to be your savior'. God judges the heart and some people, in their heart, truly "call upon the name of the Lord". However, others understand that "savior" means that he has to pay for all of their sins. In their heart, they believe that if they say the magic words then they can continue to live a life of sin and Jesus has to pay for all of their sins and give them a mansion in Heaven as a reward for living a life of sin. God has a law called 'Sowing and Reaping' which is more reliable than the 'Law of Gravity'. Yet, these people believe that they can sow a life of sin and Jesus has no choice but must take away all of the reaping of that sin. Hopefully, the reader understands that such a doctrine is from a devil. However, as far as promises go, what we see here is a lie that people can 'claim' a promise of God while they do the opposite of what God requires in order to receive that promise.

One of the most important requirements for receiving any type of blessings from God is our attitude. We can have everything else right and God will delay giving a promise or even deny it if we have a wrong attitude. The main attitude problem that most people have is believing that they are entitled or have some other reason for believing that they can make a demand on God. In **Matthew 15:21-30** and **Mark 7:24-30** we see a woman receive a miracle, which she had no right to receive, because she had the right attitude. Jesus and His disciples had gone to a city belonging to Gentiles. There, "a woman of Canaan came out of the same coasts, and cried unto him, saying, Have mercy on me, O Lord, *thou* Son of David; my daughter is grievously vexed with a devil". At first Jesus ignored her but she kept begging until she got on the nerves of the disciples. Then, "Jesus answered and said, I am not sent but unto the lost sheep of the house of Israel". Think about this. He told her "NO". "Then came she and worshipped him, saying, Lord, help me". Notice that she didn't claim any right but recognized Him as God when she "worshipped him" and agreed to obey Him in the future when she called Him "Lord". Then He insulted her by saying "It is not meet to take the children's bread, and to cast *it* to dogs". For those who don't realize it, a female dog is a bitch and the Jews called Gentiles "dogs" as an insult like all racial slurs are meant as an insult. However, instead of being upset with the insult, she answered "Truth, Lord: yet the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their masters' table". She was willing to accept any insult and any demand made by Jesus so long as she received His help. This is the true attitude required for people to receive a promise from God.

How many people want a blessing from God but are not willing to use that blessing to serve God? How many want a miracle but are not willing to shout it to everyone like the crippled man did in **Acts 4**? How many want the man of God to get them help from God but are not willing to stand by the man of God when he is beat or sent to jail like the man in **Acts 4** stayed by Peter and John?

One of the main questions which we need to honestly answer, before we 'claim a promise' or ask God for a blessing is: 'What will God get if He gives me my desire?' God wants people who will serve Him and glorify His name so that others will turn to God for salvation and blessings. So, if someone is not willing to truly glorify and serve God, why should God give them anything?

Please see the section called Promises within the Doctrinal Study called Significant Gospel Events, on ljc162121kjv.com, for references to promises found within the Gospels.

7. Prophecies

The main thing to understand about prophecies is that what most people believe, about prophecy, is completely wrong and based upon lies from devils. The true purpose of prophecy is to prove that the God of the Bible is the most powerful being in existence and that all other spiritual beings, combined, cannot match Him in power. We see this truth by looking at fulfilled prophecies. However, what is popular is speculation about unfulfilled prophecies and the foolish hope that sinful man can do what uncounted numbers of devils could not do, not even once, in thousands of years. That is, sinful men hope that they can continue in their sin, avoid God's absolute law of 'Sowing and Reaping' and thwart God's fulfillment of prophecy.

'Not gonna happen.'

There are many books and movies in the genre called 'Apocalypse'. In general, these books and movies are based upon a false interpretation of Biblical prophecies concerning future events. **Matthew 24:21-22** says: "For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be. And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened." Please notice that Jesus said that "those days shall be shortened... for the elect's sake" and that otherwise "there should no flesh be saved". However, all of these books and movies are based upon the assumption that sinful men will survive the "great tribulation" in spite of all that God can do. And, just in case someone missed this connection, the Greek word for the "great tribulation" is 'Apocalypse'. Thus, these books and movies are a direct denial of Bible prophecy concerning the "great tribulation".

That time is also called "the Day of the Lord" and "the Day of the Wrath". It is a time when God brings His wrath on all who have rejected Him as "Lord" because they rejected "Jesus Christ" as their personal "Lord". Any people who survive until "Jesus Christ" returns to rule and reign will face the "Sheep and Goat Judgment" where anyone who survived the "great tribulation", but did not help Jews during that time, will be sent to Hell.

Books and movies, about the 'Apocalypse', go along with preachers who hold 'prophecy meetings' and who claim to be some expert on unfulfilled future prophecies with messages to people who are lost or are carnal and who want to avoid the consequences of their sinful life-styles. This includes 'good godly Baptist preachers', such as the author of the Left Behind series, which is based upon a denial of the prophecy that people who are 'left behind' will receive "strong delusion" (**2Thessalonians 2:11-12**).

While I could go on, I will simply warn the reader to be very leery of any preaching on future events which have not been fulfilled yet. God always hides part of how and when He will fulfill unfulfilled prophecy. Therefore, anyone who claims to have complete knowledge of these things is a liar. In addition, the truly saved will be in Heaven, and busy with the "judgment seat of Christ" (**Romans 14:10; 2Corinthians 5:10**) and the "marriage supper of the Lamb" (**Revelation 19:9**) and, probably, won't have much time to watch events on Earth. Further, even if they can watch such events, they will not be personally involved. The main reason that people want to know about such prophecies is because of the possibility of personal involvement. However, the saved will not be personally involved and any lost person who had a chance to hear the Gospel, and did not get saved, will have "strong delusion" and can no longer avoid going to Hell. The truth is that these prophecies were written to the Jews so that some of them will be saved during that time.

2Thessalonians 2:11-12 tells us that people who had a chance to hear the gospel, but remain lost, are the people who will receive "strong delusion". Therefore, these meetings often accomplish nothing more than titillating the flesh. Yes, people can be saved at such meetings, and they can be motivated to obey the Bible, but there is often a false gospel presented at such meetings and I write from personal experience of attending such meetings. In most cases, the speaker is paid well and filled with pride as he claims to know things that the audience does not know. The listeners are filled with a false hope based upon a lie.

While many readers might object to this claim, consider that the Message called Prophecy for Today, at ljc1611kjv.com, has the main prophecy, for saved people, that needs to be fulfilled. That prophecy can definitely be used to motivate saved people to do the 'Great Commission' and to encourage lost people to be

saved. Yet, I've never heard of anyone who preaches it at a 'Prophecy Meeting'. Yes, they might mention the rapture, but then they make false claims about it and especially neglect the prophecy that anyone who has rejected the Gospel will not get another chance to be saved.

As a result, if preachers are not telling you about prophecy which applies to the saved of today, and they are not telling you that their message will not apply to the saved, then why are they delivering their message? Yes, such meetings can do things other than to motivate saved people to do the 'Great Commission', but rarely do so. Therefore, if the meeting is not aimed at motivating the saved to do the 'Great Commission' then why is such a meeting held other than titillating the flesh? (To motivate saved people to do the 'Great Commission' requires a 'call' to take the gospel to your lost loved ones while they still have a chance to get saved.) In my experience, most of such meetings are more focused on giving people something that they can use for religious gossip than on motivating obedience to the gospel. Proudful people want to claim that they know something that others do not know.

The true main purpose of prophecy is to look at fulfilled prophecy and consider all that God allowed devils to do to thwart His prophecy, and consider all of the time that God gave to the devils, and realize that God fulfilled every prophecy in every exact detail that was specified in the prophecy in spite of all that all devils did to try and thwart God's fulfilling the prophecy. Now consider that there is no other source of prophecy which gives a specific and detailed prophecy unless such a prophecy is been proven to be a lie. Thus, when we put this all together, we have full proof that the God of the Bible is the most powerful being in existence and that all other beings combined cannot match His power. Only the most powerful being can predict what He will do in the future, dare all other beings to try and stop Him, and then do exactly as He said He would do. Therefore, we should truly fear His wrath and believe His promises.

So, this brings us to the unfulfilled prophecies and why they are in our Bible. The main unfulfilled prophecies which concern the saved people deal with the 'Rapture' and the fact that the "great tribulation" has not happened yet. The truth about the 'Rapture' assures the saved that they will not go through the "great tribulation". (Much of so-called 'Prophecy Meetings' deny this truth and teach doctrinal error which the saved are to avoid.) However, the lost Jews are still God's people and they will go through the "great tribulation". Therefore, those unfulfilled prophecies are in the Bible mainly for the Jews when they find themselves in the "great tribulation". Those prophecies are not for saved people and the saved can spend time studying those prophecies, but doing so usually takes away from time studying subjects in the Bible which do apply to the saved.

With that written, please see the sections called Prophecies and Prophecies Fulfilled within the Doctrinal Study called Significant Gospel Events, on ljc162121kjv.com, for references to these subjects found within the Gospels. By looking at prophecies which are fulfilled, and considering in detail what it takes to fulfill those prophecies, we can better appreciate how powerful our God is. Then, with that understanding, we can look at the unfulfilled prophecies, which apply to us, and be encouraged by God's promises and the knowledge that nothing can prevent God from fulfilling those prophecies.

Luke 21:8-19 is a prophecy which actually is being applied today. I have never heard of anyone else teaching or preaching about prophecy which actually is being applied today. However, it is more relevant to people than claims of future prophecy which the speaker cannot be truthful in his claims of his message applying to his audience. Please see the Message called Prophecy for Today in the Addendum.

8. Titles of God

There are several titles for God the Father and for God the Son and for God the holy Spirit. I have personally done little research on the titles for God the Holy Spirit. However, I have included the research from Torrey's Topical Textbook, which is very (not perfect) reliable.

Each title tells us something about that character of the member of the Trinity. There is an entire doctrine called the 'Doctrine of God' which I have not dealt with as a separate doctrine but which several other people have dealt with. As in everything else about God and the Bible, the Bible student needs to verify what they read and be aware that there are many religious liars who seek to deceive any person whom they can deceive.

a. Trinity

As already explained, Our Bible tells us that God has revealed Himself to man as three distinct persons, which we call a Trinity. Trinity is one of the titles for the God of the Bible. There are doctrines which are based upon a denial of the Trinity and these doctrines try to convince men that God is only a little higher in power and authority than man and some even claim that man has greater power and authority. However, the doctrines, which are based upon the acknowledging that God is a Trinity, also recognize that God is so much greater than man, in power and authority, that every picture which we have of God is a distinct person and each of those distinct persons have more in power and authority than any man has.

Now, imagine a worm trying to understand people and a worm trying to understand things like Calculus. The worm probably has a better chance of understanding us than we having a complete understanding God. Even if you found a worm in the shape of a man, that worm would still have the same problems understanding man. Likewise, man has the same difficulty understanding God. While we might not understand, we are to accept the truth by faith. This means that we believe and act upon what God, and the Bible, tell us is truth even while we do not understand. Sometimes, understanding comes after we act by faith, and gain that experience, and sometimes understanding does not come and sometimes we only get incomplete understanding. However, regardless of our level of understanding, God requires us to act and deal with Him by faith. This requirement is the basic divider between people who receive blessings from God and those who do not. The blessings include salvation and also include blessings after salvation. The saved are limited in their blessings by the amount of faith that they truly have.

Now, with this basic division acknowledged, we find different religious doctrines which are designed to support the extremes of this division and many places between the extremes. With this truth, we need to understand where these differences in doctrine come from, especially when dealing with the Bible since doctrines which are claimed to be Bible based cannot be as different as they are and still come from the single "word of God". One or more must be lies from devils. Satan wants us to believe that he is the God of the Bible. However, he cannot do this if we know the true character of the true God of the Bible and see that he has a different character. Therefore, he wants us to remain ignorant of the true character of the true God of the Bible. He has ministers claiming to represent the true God of the Bible while they tell lies. Now, we can learn the truth from the Bible, which is what God ultimately wants us to do, but we can also recognize the source or doctrinal error and avoid a lot of problems by rejecting anything which comes from the source of error.

There are two basic sources of all doctrine which claims to come from the Bible. One source is the church in Antioch of Syria, which sent Paul out as their missionary, and Alexandria of Egypt which was the center of worldly learning at the time of the early church age. Antioch of Syria gives us the doctrine of the Trinity. Alexandria of Egypt denied the doctrine of the Trinity and had all of the people claiming to be Christians turn to Islam when Mohammed came around. That source of doctrinal error teaches things like 'all saved have Christ in them' where the Bible teaches 'all saved have the "Holy Spirit" in them and they must maintain their ongoing personal relationship to Christ in order to have Christ in them'. The first is based upon a

denial of the doctrine of the Trinity and the second is based upon the recognition of the doctrine of the Trinity.

Simply put, rejecting any doctrine which fails to recognize the truth of the Trinity will help the Bible student avoid a lot of confusion and doctrinal error. The same is true about doctrines which are based upon what comes from Alexandria of Egypt such as every doctrine which claims that a man written perversion has equal, or greater, authority than the KJV-1611 "word of God".

b. God the Father

God the Father has several names, most of which are introduced in the Old Testament. In the Old Testament we see evidence of several people knowing about the Trinity, but they are mainly Old Testament saints such as Job, Abraham, Joshua, David and the prophets. It appears as if most people only knew about God the Father, especially the lost or spiritually immature such as people who only dealt with God indirectly and through their Petrarach or the Mosaic priesthood.

There is a considerable amount about God the Father in the New Testament but there is such an emphasis on God the Son and God the Holy Spirit that many people miss what the New Testament tells us about God the Father. In every Book Study, on ljc1611kjb.com, is a table with what that particular book says about God the Father with links to where that book talks about God the Father. Those tables can be accessed within each Book Study or by finding the word 'God', in the Word Index, on ljc1611kjb.com, and using the multiple links found there.

Many make an emphasis of the Old Testament names for God the Father, and claim that they are going directly to Him, while Ignoring His commandment of: "This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him" (**Matthew 3:17; Matthew 17:5; Mark 9:7; Luke 9:35; 2Peter 1:17**). Their refusal to obey this command, along with their other doctrinal errors and religious lies, proves that they are liars who deceive people and are truly "ministers of Satan" (**2Corinthians 11:15**).

There are names for God the Father in the original Hebrew. I have not personally studied these names but will provide the following from other sources.

- I. Fausset's Bible Dictionary tells us: "In small letters and with initial capital "Lord" represents *Adonai* in KJV of Old Testament. In capitals "LORD" represents *Jehovah*, except [Ex 23:17](#). The "LORD God", *Adonai Jehovah*, where it ought to be "the Lord Jehovah," and [Ex 34:23](#). "GOD" in capitals also represents *Jehovah* ([Ge 15:2](#), '*Adonay Yahweh*'). "God" in small letters, with initial capital, represents '*Elohiym*'. (See [GOD](#).)">
 - That dictionary also says about Jehovah: "*Jahaveh* or *Yahaveh* is probably the correct form (*the vowel pointing in Jehovah is derived from A-d-o-n-ay*) from the substantive verb *haawah* (found only six times in the Bible; obsolete in Moses' time; retained in Chaldee and Syriac from a time anterior to the division of the Semitic languages), for the more modern *haayah*, to be; a proof of the great antiquity of the name: "I AM THAT I AM" is the key of the name ([Ex 3:14](#)), expressing unchanging Being. The name was old and known long before; it appears compounded in Jo-chebed and Mor-iah, and simply in Genesis 2 and afterward. But its significance in relation to God's people was new and now first becoming experimentally known. (See GENESIS; GOD; EXODUS.)
 - [Ex 6:2-3](#); "I am JEHOVAH, and I appeared unto Abraham,.. by the name of God Almighty (*EI-Shaddai*), but by My name JEHOVAH was I not known": its full and precious import is only now about to be revealed. To the patriarchs He was known, when giving the promises, as GOD, Almighty to fulfill them ([Ge 17:1](#)); to Moses as Jehovah unchangeably faithful ([Mal 3:6](#)) in keeping them; compare [Heb 13:8](#), which identifies Jesus with Jehovah. *Elohim* can do all that He wills; *Yahweh* will do all that He has promised. *Elohim* (*the plural expressing the fullness of God's powers*) is appropriate to creation (Genesis 1 - 2:3); JEHOVAH ELOHIM to paradise and to the covenant of grace at the fall; the combination identifies the Jehovah of the moral government with the Elohim of creation.

- If JEHOVAH had been a name of more recent introduction, the whole nation would never have accepted it with such universal reverence. Elohim appears in the trial of Abraham's faith (Genesis 22); Jehovah, in its triumph. The last 19 chapters of Genesis, from Jacob's meeting the angels and Esau, have Elohim alone (*except in the history of Judah and Pharez, Genesis 38; and Joseph's first entrance into Egypt, Genesis 39; and Jacob's dying exclamation, [Ge 49:18](#); the beginning and close of the long period of sorrow and patient waiting*) to prepare by contrast for the fuller revelation to Moses, when Jehovah is made known in its full and experimental preciousness. "To be made known" ([Ex 6:3](#)) means to be manifested in act ([Ps 9:17](#); [48:3-6](#)), making good in fact all that was implied in the name ([Eze 20:9](#)) (*nodatij*).
- The name was not new to Israel, for it occurs before [Ex 6:3](#) in [Ex 3:16](#); [4:1](#). ELOHIM, from *aalah* "to be strong" (Furst), rather than from Arabic *aliha*, "astonishment", *alaha*, "worship" (Hengstenberg), the Deity, expresses His eternal power and Godhead manifested in nature, commanding our reverence; JEHOVAH the Personal God in covenant with His people, manifesting boundless mercy, righteousness, and faithfulness to His word. So "Immanuel" is used not of the mere appellation, but of His proving in fact to be what the name means ([Isa 7:14](#)). The "I AM" ([Ex 3:14](#)) is to be filled up thus: I am to My people all whatever they want. Prayer is to supply the ellipsis, pleading God's covenanted promises: light, life, peace, salvation, glory, their exceeding great reward, etc. I am all that My word declares, and their threefold nature, body, soul, and spirit, requires. I am always all this to them ([Joh 8:58](#)). "Before Abraham began, to be (Greek) I am" ([Mt 28:20](#)).
- The Jews by a misunderstanding of [Le 24:16](#) ("utters distinctly" instead of "blasphemeth") fear to use the name, saying instead "the name," "the four lettered name," "the great and terrible name." So Septuagint, Vulgate, and even KJV (except in four places "Jehovah": [Isa 12:2](#); [26:4](#); [Ex 6:3](#); [Ps 83:18](#)) has "THE LORD," which in CAPITALS represents JEHOVAH, in small letters Adonai. Maimonides restricts its use to the priests' blessings and to the sanctuary; others to the high priest on the day of atonement, when entering the holy of holies. The Samaritans pronounced the name *Yabe* (Theodoret); found also in Epiphanius; *Yahu* in such names as Obadiah (Obad-yahu).
- So that *Jahveh* (or *Yahveh* or *Yahweh*) seems the correct pronunciation. The Hebrew said the Elohim, in opposition to false gods; but never the Jehovah, for Jehovah means the true God only. Again, My God, *Elohay*, but not My Jehovah, for Jehovah by itself means this covenant relation to one. Again, the Elohim of Israel; but not the Jehovah of Israel, for there is no other Jehovah. Again, the living Elohim, but not the living Jehovah; for Jehovah means this without the epithet. Jehovah is in Old Testament the God of redemption. The correlative of Elohim is man, of Jehovah redeemed man. Elohim is God in nature, Jehovah God in grace ([Ex 34:6-7](#)).
- Elohim is the God of providence; Jehovah is the God of promise and prophecy; hence, the prophets' formula is, "thus saith Jehovah," not Elohim. Elohim is wider in meaning, embracing the representatives of Deity, angels and human judges and rulers ([Ps 82:6](#); [Joh 10:34-35](#)). Jehovah is deeper, the incommunicable name. The more frequent use of the name Jehovah from Samuel's time is due to the religious revival then inaugurated, and to the commencement of the regular school of prophets. In the first four verses of the Bhagavat God says to Brahma, "I was at first ... afterward I AM THAT WHICH IS, and He who must remain am I." (Sir W. Jones)".
- That dictionary also says about God: "(See GENESIS, on *Elohim* and *Yahweh*). ELOHIM expresses the might of the Creator and Sustainer of the universe. ELYON, His sublimity, ([Ge 14:22](#)), "the Most High." SHADDAI, the "Almighty," His all sufficiency ([Ge 17:1](#); [Php 4:19](#); [2Co 3:5](#); [12:9](#)). JEHOVAH, His unchangeable faithfulness to His covenanted promises to His people. ADONAI, His lordship, which being delegated to others as also is His might as ELOHIM, ADONAI and ELOHIM are used occasionally of His creatures, angels and men in authority, judges, etc. ([Ps 8:5](#); [97:7](#) (Hebrew); [Ps 82:1,6-7](#).) "Lord" in small letters stands for Hebrew ADONAI in KJV, but in capitals ("LORD") for JEHOVAH. ELYON, SHADDAI, and JEHOVAH are never used but of GOD; Jehovah the personal God of the Jews, and of the church in particular.
- ELOAH, the singular, is used only in poetry. The derivation is *'alah* "to fear," as [Ge 31:42,53](#), "the fear of Isaac," or *'alah* "to be mighty." The plural ELOHIM: is the common form in prose

and poetry, expressing that He combines in Himself all the fullness of divine perfections in their manifold powers and operations; these the heathen divided among a variety of gods. ELOHIM concentrates all the divine attributes assigned to the idols severally, and, besides those, others which corrupt man never of himself imagined, infinite love, goodness, justice, wisdom, creative power, inexhaustible riches of excellence; unity, self existence, grace, and providence are especially dwelt on, [Ex 3:13-15](#); [15:11](#); [34:6-7](#). The plural form hints at the plurality of Persons, the singular verb implies the unity of Godhead.

- The personal acts attributed to the Son ([Joh 1:3](#); [Ps 33:6](#); [Pr 8:22-32](#); [30:4](#); [Mal 3:1](#), the Lord the Sender being distinct from the Lord the Sent who "suddenly comes") and to the holy Spirit respectively ([Ge 1:2](#); [Ps 104:30](#)) prove the distinctness of the Persons. The thrice repeated "LORD" ([Nu 6:25-27](#)) and holy" ([Isa 6:3](#)) imply the same. But reserve was maintained while the tendency to polytheism prevailed, and as yet the redeeming and sanctifying work of the Son and the blessed Spirit was unaccomplished; when once these had been manifested the doctrine of the Trinity in Unity was fully revealed in New Testament."

- II. The Morrish Bible Dictionary tells us: "The names by which God makes Himself known are various.
1. *El*, 'the strong or mighty one.' It is often used of God, especially in Job and the Psalms. [Job 5:8](#); [Ps 22:1](#), etc.; and of the Lord Jesus in [Isa 9:6](#). It is also used for the false gods, [Ps 81:9](#); [Da 11:36](#); and is translated 'mighty' in [Ps 29:1](#); [82:1](#).
 2. *Eloah* (*Elah* Chaldee), *Elohim*. The names most commonly used for God the Creator, the One with whom man has to do, the supreme Deity. [Ge 1](#). (Running all through the O.T. to [Mal 3:18](#).) These words are also applied to God's representatives, such as angels and judges. [Ex 22:28](#); [Ps 82:6](#); and also to false gods. [Le 19:4](#). *Elohim* (which is plural, called the plural of majesty or excellency) is the word of most frequent occurrence. When it is distinctly used for the one true God the article is often added.
 3. *Jehovah*. This is a name of relationship with men, especially with Israel, taken by God in time. It is derived from *havah*, 'to exist,' and may be expanded into 'who is, who was, and is to come.' God thus reveals Himself in time as the ever-existing One: that is, in Himself eternally, He is always the same: cf. [Heb 1:12](#). The above 'relationship' may be seen in the change from Elohim, the Creator, in Gen. 1, to Jehovah Elohim in Gen. 2, when man was brought into relationship with God. Again in [Ge 7:16](#) Elohim ordered Noah to make the ark but Jehovah shut him in. Unfortunately the name Jehovah is seldom employed in the A.V. It is generally represented by LORD (sometimes GOD) printed in small capitals.* There is a contraction of Jehovah into *Jah*, also translated in the A.V. by LORD, except in [Ps 68:4](#), where Israel is exhorted to sing unto God, and "extol him by his name JAH." Jah signifies the absolute supremacy of the self-existing One; whereas Jehovah was the name made known to Israel, and on which they could count. "God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM," [Ex 3:14](#), where the word is *Ehyeh*, which is from the same root as Jehovah, the Eternal existing One; He that was, and is, and the coming One.
* In four places the A.V. has preserved the name Jehovah, namely, [Ex 6:8](#); [Ps 83:18](#); [Isa 12:2](#); [26:4](#).
 4. *Shaddai*, 'the Almighty,' is another name of God, and is often so translated, especially in Job, without any other name attached. [Job 6:4,14](#); [Ps. 68: 14](#), etc. At times it is associated with one of the above words, and was the name by which He was especially known to the Patriarchs, as El Shaddai, God Almighty, [Ex 6:3](#); which passage does not mean that the Patriarchs had not heard of the name of Jehovah, but that it was not the especial name for them.
 5. *Elyon*, 'the Most High,' is another name of God, which stands alone, as in [De 32:8](#); [2Sa 24:14](#); and in [Da 4:17-34](#) (from a kindred word); or it has one of the above words added and is then 'the most high God,' [Ge 14:20](#); or 'the LORD most high.' [Ps 7:17](#). It is not confined to Israel, for He is "the Most High over *all* the earth." [Ps 83:18](#).
 - 6, 7. *Adon* and *Adonai*, and the plural *Adonim*, are all translated 'Lord'; they occur frequently, and are found in some of the following compounds:
Adon Jehovah, [Ex 23:17](#), the Lord GOD.
Adon Jehovah Elohim, [Isa 51:22](#), thy Lord, the LORD, and thy God.
Adon Jehovah Sabaoth, [Isa 19:4](#), the Lord, the LORD OF HOSTS.
Adonai Elohim, [Ps 86:12](#), O Lord my God: cf. [Da 9:3,9,15](#).
Adona Jehovah, [De 9:26](#), O Lord GOD (occurs frequently).
Adonai Jehovah Sabaoth, [Jer 2:19](#), the Lord GOD of hosts.

El Elohim, [Ge 33:20](#), El-elohe *Israel*; [Ge 46:3](#), God, the God of thy father.
 El Elohim Jehovah, [Jos 22:22](#), the LORD God of gods.
 El Shaddai, [Ge 28:3](#), etc., God Almighty.
 Jah Jehovah, [Isa 26:4](#), the LORD JEHOVAH.
 Jehovah Adon, [Ne 10:29](#), the LORD our Lord.
 Jehovah Adonai, [Ps 68:20](#), GOD the Lord.
 Jehovah El, [Ps 31:5](#), O LORD God.
 Jehovah Elohim, [Ge 9:26](#), etc., the LORD God.
 Jehovah Elohim Sabaoth Adonai, [Am 5:16](#), the LORD, the God of hosts, the Lord.
 Jehovah Jehovah El, [Ex 34:6](#), the LORD, the LORD God.
 Jehovah Sabaoth, [Jer 46:18](#), the LORD of hosts.
 Jehovah Sabaoth Elohim, [Jer 27:4](#), etc., the LORD of hosts, the God of *Israel*.

For *titles* in combination with Jehovah, See [JEHOVAH](#).

The true pronunciation of Jehovah is declared to be lost: the Jews when reading the O.T. never utter it (from a constrained interpretation of [Le 24:16](#)), but say, 'the name,' 'the great and terrible name,' etc.

In the N.T. the word Θεός is constantly translated God; and Κύριος is the word commonly rendered Lord. In the O.T. the latter is used by the LXX as the translation of Jehovah, so in the N.T. it often represents Jehovah, and is then mostly, if not always, without the article, as in [Mt 1:20,22,24](#), etc. The Lord is also called 'the Almighty,' [Re 1:8](#), etc.; and there are a few compound names as in the O.T.:

God Almighty, [Re 16:14](#); [19:15](#).
 Lord Almighty, [2Co 6:18](#).
 Lord God Almighty, [Re 4:8](#); [11:17](#); [15:3](#); [16:7](#); [21:22](#).
 Lord of Sabaoth, [Ro 9:29](#); [Jas 5:4](#).

The characteristic name of God in the N.T. in relationship with His saints is that of FATHER: it was used anticipatively in the Lord's intercourse with His disciples, but made a reality after His resurrection, when He sent the message: "I ascend unto my Father and your Father, and to my God and your God." [Joh 20:17](#).

THE TRINITY. In reference to this term the Father is God. [Php 2:11](#); [1Th 1:1](#), etc. The Lord Jesus is God. [Isa 9:6](#); [Mt 1:23](#); [Joh 1:1](#); [Ro 9:5](#); [Php 2:6](#); [Col 2:9](#); [1Ti 3:16](#); [Heb 1:8](#). The Holy Spirit is God: "the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters." [Ge 1:2](#). Ananias lied to 'the holy Ghost,' 'unto God;' and Sapphira unto the 'Spirit of the Lord,' [Ac 5:3-4,9](#); 'Spirit of God.' [1Co 2:11](#); [3:16](#), etc. That there are three divine Persons (if we may so express it) is plain from scripture. The Father sent the Son, and He came to earth. The Father sent the holy Spirit, and the Lord Jesus sent the holy Spirit, and He came from heaven. He is a divine Person, of which there are many proofs (See HOLY SPIRIT). There is but one God.

Scripture reveals what God is in Himself, 'God is love' (used absolutely), [1Jo 4:8](#); and 'God is light' (used relatively, in opposition to darkness), [1Jo 1:5](#); and Christ is the expression of both in a Man. The principal of God's attributes and characteristics as revealed in scripture are

1. His Eternity. [Hab 1:12](#); [Ro 1:20](#).
2. Invisibility. [Col 1:15](#).
3. Immortality. [Ps 90:2](#); [1Ti 1:17](#).
4. Omnipotence. [Job 24:1](#); [Mt 19:26](#); only Potentate. [1Ti 6:15](#).
5. Omnipresence. [Ps 139:7-10](#); [Jer 23:23-24](#).
6. Omniscience. [1Ch 28:9](#); [Isa 42:8-9](#); [Ro 8:29-30](#); [Heb 4:13](#).
7. Incorruptibility. [Ro 1:23](#); [Jas 1:13](#).
8. Immutability. [Mal 3:6](#); [Jas 1:17](#).
9. Wisdom. [Ps 104:24](#); [Ro 11:33-36](#).
10. Holiness. [Ps 47:8](#); [99:3,5](#); [Re 4:8](#).
11. Justice. [Ps 89:14](#); [2Ti 4:8](#).
12. Grace and mercy. Ps. 136; [2Co 1:3](#); [Eph 2:4](#).
13. Longsuffering. [Ex 34:6](#); [Ro 9:22](#).
14. Faithfulness. [Ps 36:5](#); [Heb 10:23](#).

God's eternal power and divinity may be known in creation, [Ro 1:20](#); but He has revealed Himself in the person of Christ, the Son, the eternal Word. God has been pleased also to reveal Himself in His written word. His purposes, His ways, and what He has done for sinful man, all demand universal reverence, adoration, and worship.”

- III. While I could provide many more references, these references should provide the basics for the Bible student. They can do a deeper study at another time.

c. God the Son

It is important to understand that most of the identifiers for the Son of God actually identify a role, or position, that He has. Only the name of “Jesus” identifies Him in a personal way and even the name of “Jesus” is used to identify a role of the Son of God, in certain instances.

One doctrine which is critical, to properly understanding the Bible and what it tells us about our relationship to God during the ‘Church Age’, is that the Son of God uses some roles to deal with all people the same way and some roles to deal with people in an individual personal way and some roles to do both. (The last will be explained for the roles involved.) When the Son of God uses a role to deal with all people the same way, we see that He is “no respecter of persons” (**Acts 10:34; Romans 2:11; Ephesians 6:9; Colossians 3:25**). That is: ‘it does not matter who you are nor what position or credentials you have among men; God treats you exactly the same as He treats all other men’. However, when the Son of God uses a role to deal with people in a personal way, then the judgment, blessings and cursing, from the Son of God, are also personal.

The roles of “Lord” and “King” are non-personal and deal with people in relationship to law and government where God must be “no respecter of persons” in order to remain righteous and just.

The roles of “Jesus” and “Christ” are personal and deal with people in an ongoing personal relationship. “Jesus” dealt with all people, lost and saved. However, “Christ” only deals with the saved. “Jesus” shows us how to live physically while we are in this physical reality. “Christ” shows the saved how to mature spiritually while we are in this physical reality. Once we die, there can be no more changes. When we are personally judged, we will each receive reward or punishment based upon how much and how well we personally obeyed the personal leadings, and commands, of “Jesus” and “Christ”.

The roles of “Lamb”, “Saviour” and “Son” all have a way to receive the relationship, which is through these roles, that is the same for all people and God is “no respecter of persons”. However, once a person does what is required to receive these relationships, then the relationship becomes personal for the amount, and type, of blessings which are received. Now, I understand that this last statement might be somewhat confusing to some people, but there is more of an explanation under each of those titles, below. For now, I am just providing general separation between the roles.

The Old Testament name of “Messiah / Messias” is the Hebrew form of the New Testament name of “Christ”. These Old Testament names identify a role, the same way that “Christ” does. In addition, there are Old Testament appearances of God the Son, as a physical adult man, in what are called ‘Christophanies’. However, most references to the Son of God are in the New Testament. I have not dealt with the Old Testament references to the Son of God. In the New Testament, we have several main titles for the Son of God and many minor titles for Him. Please see the section called [Minor Titles of the Son of God](#) within the Doctrinal Study called [Significant Gospel Events](#), on [ljc162121kiv.com](#), for references to these less-used names. I started from a similar list, which I found, but had to correct some errors within it and add some missing titles to create the list which is on [ljc162121kiv.com](#).

In addition, on [ljc1611kiv.com](#) is a major Menu item called [Lord Jesus Christ](#). It deals with the major names / titles of the Son of God which are found in the New Testament. (Those names are: Lord, Jesus, Christ, Lord Jesus, Lord Christ, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, Lord Jesus Christ, Son, Son of God, Son of Man, Son of David, Saviour, King, Lamb). As the reader should note, there are combination names, such as “Lord Jesus Christ”, which are constructed by combining the single names. The doctrine of the

combined name is also constructed by combining the doctrines of the single names. However, this combination must be done in the godly Biblical way. Therefore, the reader is encouraged to look at the web pages for the proper Biblical doctrine, which comes from studying every instance of the combined name, and not by just making up their own combination.

That Menu item leads to a web page which explains the attitude and motivation of my study which is designed to “prove” what is the true interpretation of these names / roles within the “word of God”. (This attitude and motivation are also applicable to everything on ljc1611kjb.com.) Most commentators are more interested in providing applications of the “word of God”. They provide a Bible reference, tell you that the interpretation is what their religious teaching says, and then continue to provide an application. This is the same method used by Pharisees which led to doctrinal disputes with Jesus. They did not do what was necessary to “prove” that their religious traditions were providing the true interpretation of the “word of God”. They did not even know the right way to do so. Even so, the majority of commentators do the same today.

In order to prove something in what is called a ‘limited universe’; (and the “word of God” is limited in the number of words, sentences, paragraphs, etc.); one must show that the claimed proof is true in every instance. That is what is provided at ljc1611kjb.com. From the main web page, for the Lord Jesus Christ Menu item, the reader can access web pages for each New Testament Book and an Overview web page and a Verses web page. On the web pages for each New Testament Book, the reader will find links to notes for every instance where a major name / title of the Son of God is used within that Bible book. Each web page is sub-divided by name / title and has a general note about how that name / title is used within the Bible book. Then there is a quote of every verse, within that Bible book, and a note explaining how each name / title is used within that verse with consideration of context and of the basic doctrinal usage (interpretation) of that name / title within the Bible.

Thus, the requirement to show that the interpretation is true in every instance is met. In addition, the requirement of keeping the interpretation within the context of where it is found is met along with the requirement of showing that a given interpretation is consistent across the Bible.

Starting in the year 2005, many preachers claimed that they would prove that someone else did a work with the same level of detail, but no one ever came back with the identification of such a work. At that same time, many preachers claimed that they would prove that someone else did a work which covered every instance found within the Bible, but no one ever came back with the identification of such a work. At that same time, many preachers claimed that they would prove that what I had disagreed with what the Bible literally said, but no one ever came back with any place where their claim was true.

The point of all of this is that there are many commentators who have many applications of what the Bible says about the various names / titles for the Son of God, but almost all base their work on the interpretation from their own religious traditions, which is often wrong. Most never try to tell how they went from quoting the verse to saying what the interpretation, that they used, was. If you remember your Algebra and Geometry classes, such actions received a flunk. You were required to show every step used to get from stating the problem to your final solution and each step had to use a proven method of getting from the prior step to the next step. Even those commentators, who do try to show how they arrived at their interpretation from the quoted verse, do not provide this level of detail. In addition, NO other commentator deals with every sentence, every verse, every punctuation mark, and every doctrinally significant word within the Bible book under consideration with full consideration of the context and of the consistency across the Bible. For many years many preachers have searched for some other author or work which provided a similar level of evidence, but no one has ever identified such an author or work.

Therefore, what the reader finds on ljc1611kjb.com is the single true Biblical interpretation of the major names / titles of the Son of God. (Other works may provide the same truth but do not provide the detail level of evidence to truly “prove” their claims.) The work, at ljc1611kjb.com, has withstood years of peer review by many hostile preachers with NO error found. The level of detail has been proven to be

unmatched and the quality of the work has been proven to be unmatched. This is critical if the reader wants to avoid doctrinal error. **1Thessalonians 5:21** says: “Prove all things; hold fast that which is good.” While what is on ljc1611kjv.com is based upon the true procedure which is required to “prove”, no one has ever shown me any place, or any commentator, who does the same. This includes popular reference works such as Matthew-Henry. Others do a good job of persuasion, but none meet the full requirements to “prove”, like ljc1611kjv.com does. Therefore, following those others cannot get people the promise that God will enable them to “hold fast that which is good”.

What the Bible calls “good” is: ‘what comes from God’. In addition, the semi-colon in this verse makes it a two-step process and we cannot take a second step until we take the first step. America has not “held fast” to ‘what comes from God’ because, while religions and preachers persuade people to believe their doctrine, they have failed to “prove” their doctrine.

Now, before we get into the specific doctrinal meanings of specific Biblical names / titles for the Son of God, there are a couple of more doctrinal items which need to be considered. First, God does not change (**Malachi 3:6; Hebrews 13:8**). Therefore, God did not give one name / title for the Son of God one meaning in one place and then give it another meaning in another place within the Bible. Also, God did not give that meaning to another name / title for the Son of God. The point being that the habit of many religions and preachers and people to use the various names / titles for the Son of God interchangeably is doctrinal error and causes greater doctrinal error.

For example, there is a ‘dirty little secret’ in Baptist churches of America which is the fact that many people who have made a profession of salvation doubt their eternal security which is part of true Biblical salvation. The main source of this particular problem is preachers telling people to ‘ask Jesus to be your savior’ or ‘ask Christ to be your savior’. Neither of those commands come from the Bible but both come from doctrinal error which is based upon using the various names / titles of the Son of God interchangeably. The places where the Bible promises eternal spiritual salvation (as opposed to physical salvation), the role of “Lord” is used either directly or indirectly. Now, God judges the heart. When people pray for salvation and in their heart accept the relationship with the Son of God which is part of His role as “Lord”, they do not have this problem of doubt. But, when they refuse that relationship, they have this problem of doubt. So, most readers will wonder what the difference is. The role as “Lord” includes accepting that His power and authority is so far above our own that we must accept all commands without challenge even when we don’t understand them and even when we think those commands are wrong. In addition, God’s role as “Lord” includes His legal right to tell us what to do, to judge our obedience, and to punish our disobedience. Most (all?) people who doubt their eternal security in salvation also want to believe that they can disobey without suffering punishment. Many people believe they can do this if they are dealing with the roles of “Jesus” or “Christ”, but most people understand that they will be punished for disobedience if they are dealing with the role of “Lord”.

Now, there are many more doctrinal errors which are based upon the mistaken belief that people can use these names / titles interchangeably. They are dealt with in more detail on ljc1611kjv.com. Therefore, since this is an introductory book that deals with subjects at a summary level, we will move on.

The next web page, which is reached from the main web page of the Menu item called Lord Jesus Christ, is the web page called Verses. This page has links to every place in the New Testament, and some links to places in the Old Testament, where these names / titles are used. However, it does not just provide the links but divides them by application. For example, the places where “Lord” is used for God the Father is separated from where “Lord” is used for God the Son and both are separated from where “lord” is used for a man. In further addition, the links are further sub-divided by specific application. Thus, the reader has a basis for a detailed study or lesson which deals with a particular application.

With these general observations made, we will now deal with the various names / titles and their specific Biblical doctrinal meanings.

I. Lord

The true doctrinal usage of the title / role of “Lord”, in the Bible is: “‘Lord’ deals with the specification and enforcement of all legal matters and of any function of government’.

“Lord” is a legal term. It is a role that is related to government. “Lord” is similar to “King” with the exception that a “Lord” is at a lower government level and he enforces the Laws given to Him while a “King” makes up His own laws. “Lord” is one of the most common names for God the Father in the Old Testament. Only the name of “God” is used more. While some places in the New Testament use “Lord” to mean God the Father, most of the New Testament references are to our Lord Jesus Christ. “Lord” is also used in the New Testament to denote that our “Lord Jesus Christ” is also God. As God, our “Lord Jesus Christ” is “Lord of lords” and “King of kings”.

A lord makes law, judges those who violate the law and punishes lawbreakers and rewards law keepers. In return for people following the laws of a lord, he provides things they can't provide for themselves like protection from enemies, order and justice. “Lord” is also associated with God assigned human roles such as government positions, pastor, parent, etc. The Bible uses “Lord Jesus” when talking about ‘God in human flesh’ being the ultimate human ruler of all mankind throughout all of history. Please note that the Bible does not call “Jesus” “Lord Jesus” until after the resurrection.

One thing to understand is that “forgiveness” is a legal term. God has two different legal systems called the “great white throne” (**Revelation 20:11**) and the “judgment seat of Christ” (**Romans 14:10; 2Corinthians 5:10**). In addition, **1John 3:4** tells us: “Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law.” Since we continue to sin even after we are saved, sin is dealt with by both of God’s legal systems. However, each legal system deals with sin, and “forgiveness”, differently. This truth is something that most people do not realize. We all start out as sinners condemned to an eternity in the “lake of fire” (**Revelation 20:14-15**), which is the punishment given to all who go to God’s criminal court system called the “great white throne”. When we accept “Jesus” as our personal “Lord”, God calls court into session, has the angel Court Recorder open the books to where our sins are written down, God has him “Blot out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us” (**Colossians 2:14**), then God legally adopts us (**Romans 8:15; Galatians 4:5; Ephesians 1:5**), and moves us from His “great white throne” judgment system to His “judgment seat of Christ” judgment system.

Once we are a child of God, we are judged in God’s “judgment seat of Christ” judgment system as “sons” and as “servants”. However, as **1John 1:5-10** tells us, we must let “Jesus Christ” “cleanse” us (‘get the sin out of our life’) if we want Him to “forgive” us. One doctrinal error that many people believe is that all sins are blotted from our Heavenly legal record when we first get saved. However, **Romans 3:25** says that this is only for “sins that are past”. Further, God cannot have a righteous legal system if it deals with sins (crimes) before we do them. That is why all saved must face the “judgment seat of Christ”. If a saved person truly lets “Jesus Christ” “cleanse” us (‘get the sin out of our life’) from sins before we get there, then those sins are “forgiven” and will not be brought up at the “judgment seat of Christ”. However, in spite of popular doctrinal error, there will be true “judgment” at the “judgment seat of Christ” and punishment given (**2Corinthians 5:10-11**) to saved people, in Heaven, who still have sins on their Heavenly legal record. That punishment will not end until “God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes” (**Revelation 21:4**). Therefore, it is important to realize that “forgiveness” is handled differently in each of God’s legal systems and that both legal systems are handled through God’s role as “Lord”, which has “no respecter of persons” (**Acts 10:34; Romans 2:11; Ephesians 6:9; Colossians 3:25**).

With the prior acknowledged, we will deal with one more point before moving on. Although it seems as if everyone knows that “Jesus” forgave sin, and most people think there are more incidents, there is only once in the Gospels where “Jesus” forgave sin (**Matthew 9:1-7; Mark 2:1-12; Luke 5:17-26**), which is actually part of the role of “Lord”, and the context lets us know that He did it to prove to the legal experts (scribes [**Matthew 9:3; Mark 2:6**]; Pharisees and “doctors of the law” [**Luke 5:17**]) that he

had the right to do so and that He was the Son of God, their Lord and “Christ” (**Acts 2:36**). However, even then He acted like a judge meeting a criminal before their trial and establishing a ‘plea bargain’ where the criminal agrees to plead guilty in court and make a full confession while the judge agrees to give a specified punishment. However, the agreement is not in effect until they meet in a proper legal setting of court and the legalities are properly enacted. Likewise, “Jesus” agreed to forgive them, at the time of the Gospels, but that forgiveness was not legally enacted until they were in God’s court in Heaven. So, the only exception to the rule that the Son of God does everything legal through His role as “Lord” is the one time where He had to prove to the nation of Israel that he was their “Lord and Christ” in human flesh and even then, He did not violate proper legal procedure.

In summary and ignoring minor points, the main doctrine when the Bible uses the title of “Lord” is that the Bible is dealing with legal matters. When we accept “Jesus” as our personal “Lord”, we agree to accept His commandments without challenge and by faith, we agree with His right to tell us what to do and to judge our level of obedience and to accept any punishment for disobedience.

When it comes to “Lord” being our “Saviour”, we must consider His role in our initial salvation and also in our ongoing salvation (“God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth” [**2Thessalonians 2:13**]). In our initial salvation, “Lord” took care of all of the legal problems caused by our violating God’s law with sin. He applied, in the legal record, the “remission of sins that are past” [**Romans 3:25**]). He then adopted us and moved us to His family court system (the “judgment seat of Christ”), as already explained for this point. In our ongoing salvation, “Lord” deals with the legal requirements, in the “judgment seat of Christ”, which are caused by the sins which we do after becoming a child of God.

II. Jesus

The true doctrinal usage of the title / role of “Jesus”, in the Bible is: “Jesus” paid the legal spiritual debt for the sins of the whole world. He also is our example of how to live in this flesh using the power of the Holy Ghost. Since the “Son of God” has returned to Heaven, His experience as “Jesus” provides the understanding of human frailties when God judges His children.

The names of “Jesus” and “Son of man” are used any time that the Bible is referring to the Son of God’s human form or His physical attributes. “Son of man” is a role which is used to emphasize that He is like all other men while “Jesus” is His name and is used to deal with Him as an individual person. However, He is not the only person, in the Bible, with the name of “Jesus”. The single definition, and doctrinal interpretation, of any word in the Bible is what is the same in every Biblical usage. The differences, in Biblical usage, give us the multiple applications. With that acknowledged, we see that every reference to “Jesus”, in the Bible, is talking about ‘a literal physical man’ with the Son of God being one of three applications (men with this name).

Next, we see that every reference to “Jesus”, in the Bible, is talking about ‘a literal physical man’ while “Lord” and “Christ” are roles which are often filled by a Spiritual being. (There are human “lords” referenced in the Bible.) Think about a man who is identified as ‘Preacher Bob’. ‘Preacher’ is his title and identifies his role. ‘Bob’ is his name. When people deal with him as ‘Preacher’, the relationship is different than when people, such as his family, deal with him as just another person who happens to be named ‘Bob’. There is a similar difference between the relationship that people have with the Son of God when they deal with Him as “Jesus” as opposed to when they deal with Him as “Lord” or “Christ”.

We find the name of “Jesus” 983 times and all of those are in the New Testament. In **Colossians 4:11** we read: “And Jesus, which is called Justus, who are of the circumcision”. If the reader checks the context of this quote, then it will be obvious that he is not ‘God in human flesh’. (Remember, the definition must be the same for every place that a Bible word is used because the definition is the interpretation and there is only one allowed.) In addition, we see the name of “Jesus” used for “Joshua”, of the Old Testament, and we see this in: **Acts 7:44-45** and **Hebrews 4:8**. Therefore, the true Biblical doctrinal

meaning, of the name of “Jesus” is: 'the name of a literal physical man' with the main application being 'God in human flesh' and the main doctrinal application being 'the humanity of God in Human Flesh'.

This is a critical doctrine which is denied even today in spite of our having two epistles written to counter this doctrine from devils (that “Jesus” came in the flesh) {**1John** and **2John**}. Please notice that **1John 4:1-3** says: “Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world. Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesseth that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God: And every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God: and this is that spirit of antichrist, whereof ye have heard that it should come; and even now already is it in the world”. Notice that we are warned about “spirits” which are in the false prophets. However, when we compare their attitudes and actions to those described in **1Timothy 4:1-3**, we see that their doctrine comes from devils. Further, this doctrine does not have to deny that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh it only has to “confesseth not” ('refuse to live a life which shows this doctrinal truth'). The people who preach the 'health and welfare gospel' are an example of “false prophets” who preach the doctrine of devils because they refuse to follow the example which came from “Jesus” when He lived in the flesh.

“Jesus” is our example of how to live in this flesh Using the Power of the holy Ghost. (Please see that Doctrinal Study on ljc1611kjb.com for more details.) All that “Jesus” did while on Earth was done by the Power of the holy Ghost. This is evidenced by the fact that other men did similar miracles to most of the miracles done by “Jesus”. In addition, part of the doctrine taught in **Hebrews** is the fact that “Jesus” had to live and die as a literal physical man in order to pay for our sins. **Hebrews 2:9** tells us “But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.” When God and death meet, death loses. Therefore, the Son of God had to set aside His power and authority as God when He was conceived in Mary and not take back His own power and authority until after He died for our sins. Thus, we see that “Jesus”, as a literal physical man, paid the debt for our sins and that He had to do this as a literal physical man, and not as God, in order for God to remain righteous. There is more involved in our salvation and God the Father, the Holy Spirit, and the Son of God in His other roles took care of those other requirements. However, the main point of this paragraph is that we see that the Son of God had to be a literal physical man in order to take care of this requirement for our salvation.

“Jesus” was a literal physical man who died to pay for our salvation, but He also did more than that. While the devil gets good men to deny it, God had “Jesus” be our example of how to live in this flesh and God expects our lives to show that we follow the example of Jesus. (Please see the Doctrinal Study called What Would Jesus Do? on ljc1611kjb.com for more details.) While this Study is incomplete, at the time of this writing, I hope to add more to it. This doctrine is one of the most important doctrines which we can take from the Gospels.

When it comes to “Jesus” being our “Saviour”, we must consider His role in our initial salvation and also in our ongoing salvation (“God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth” [**2Thessalonians 2:13**]). In our initial salvation, “Jesus” died to pay for our sins (“Whom God hath set forth *to be* a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past” [**Romans 3:25**]) as a lost sinner. In our ongoing salvation, “Jesus” is our example of how to live in this flesh and, when we follow His example, we are “sanctified unto salvation” (**2Thessalonians 2:13**).

III. Christ

This role of the Son of God is probably the most perverted by religious doctrine which comes from devils and is based upon the worldly religious doctrine which is based upon what was taught by Alexandria of Egypt. The true doctrinal usage of the title / role of “Christ”, in the Bible is: “Christ” is the main role used by the “Son of God” in our ongoing personal relationship with God. This role is pictured by marriage. A godly man has no marital relationships with anyone who is not his wife. Likewise, in the Bible,

“Christ” never deals with the lost. In addition, just as marriage changes the life of everyone, so also does “Christ” change the lives of the truly saved to make them more like God’.

The first thing to understand is that **Ephesians 5** teaches us how to follow the example of “Christ” and ends the chapter by telling us that the godly relationship between a saved man and his saved wife is a picture of the relationship between “Christ and the church”. One of the reasons why there is so much divorce is because Satan wants to destroy this symbolic example of God. Therefore, Satan has his ministers teaching many deceptions which will destroy marriages and this symbolic example of God. One such doctrinal error is the worldly definition of the word “love”. We hear this wrong definition, and other wrong definitions, preached most of the time even by ‘good godly fundamental KJV only Baptist preachers’. How often have we heard that ‘**1Corinthians 13** is the love chapter’? Yet the word “love” is not in that chapter. That claim is a popular religious error which promotes the doctrinal error that “love” and “charity” have the same Biblical definition. The truth is that ‘**1Corinthians 13** is the charity chapter’ while ‘**1John 4** is the love chapter’.

Think about how often a man tell a woman ‘I love you’ before they get married and she has a cute sexy form. But he later says ‘I don’t love her anymore’ when she has an older, fatter, uglier form. He is obviously using the worldly definition for the word “love”, which definition actually matches the Biblical definition for the word “lust”.

While I could go on, I will give the true Biblical definition and return to our main subject. True Biblical love is: ‘doing what is best for the other person with the emphasis on what is best for the other person eternally even when that includes short-term physical loss for the person doing the love or the person receiving the love’. According to **1John 4:9**, our best example of true Biblical “love” is Jesus dying on the cross to provide for our eternal salvation. He felt nothing that the world associates with “love” while He suffered and died and yet He agreed to suffer all of this, in His flesh, because that is what was required for our eternal spiritual good called salvation.

Now, with marriage as our symbolic example of the true relationship between “Christ and the church”, and with the true Biblical definition of “love”, the reader should understand that our relationship with “Christ” is one where He will do everything that He can to give us the best eternal spiritual result. This means trying to get us to become like Him as much as is possible. However, Satan hates all saved. Therefore, Satan has his ministers preaching doctrinal error which is designed to keep the saved from receiving eternal blessings from God and designed to cause the saved to receive punishment from God, in Heaven, for over 1,000 years.

The first of these lies from Satan is that all saved always have “Christ in” them. When the Bible uses the word “in” attached to a role of God, it always means ‘in relationship to’ the role of God. Therefore, when the Bible speaks about “Christ in” or “in Christ” it always means ‘in relationship to Christ’.

The Biblical truth is that the truly saved always have God’s “Holy Spirit” them, not “Christ in” them. (This popular doctrinal error comes from Alexandria of Egypt and is part of denying the doctrine of the Trinity.) The result, of this particular error, is that people believe that they can ‘claim’ the blessings while refusing to fulfill God’s requirements. As a result, they do not get the blessings, and that causes them to doubt the “word of God” even more and causes Satan to be happier.

Now, if the reader will access the Doctrinal Study, on ljc1611kjb.com, called Relational Prepositions, they will see the word “if” used in the Bible in relationship to the phrases “Christ in” and “in Christ”. That means that these relationships are conditional and that the saved must do their part or they will not have these relationships, and the blessings associated with the relationships. Now, return to our spiritual example of a relationship. If a man leaves his wife, he can still be married but not enjoying the benefits of marriage. Likewise, if a saved person leaves their ongoing personal relationship with God that is “in Christ”, they will not receive the blessings of that relationship even though they are saved. Yes, God said: “I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee” (**Genesis 28:15; Deuteronomy 31:6,8; Joshua**

1:5; 1Samuel 12:22; 1Chronicles 28:20; Psalms 37:25,28; Isa 41:10,17; Hebrews 13:5), but we can leave our relationship with Him.

Next, the [Verses](#) web page, reached via the [Lord Jesus Christ](#) Menu item on [ljc1611kjv.com](#), shows that there is a greater variety of things that the Bible tells us about “Christ” than about any other role of God. This is because relationships between two thinking beings are complicated and involved a great many different ways to interact. Again, as already mentioned, every verse in the New Testament, that mentions “Christ”, is in that Study along with notes showing how “Christ” is used within the context and how it is the same all across the Bible.

While “Christ” is the Greek form used in the New Testament, the Old Testament, Hebrew, form of the same name is: “Messiah / Messias”. Unfortunately, [ljc1611kjv.com](#) does not have a Study, at this time, on the Old Testament, Hebrew form of the name.

In addition to the references already given, there are some [Messages](#), on [ljc1611kjv.com](#), about this doctrine and many of the notes, in the detailed Book Studies, have outlines which can be used as the basis for messages.

Following this paragraph are overview notes for the combination names of the Son of God. As already written, the doctrine of the combined name is also constructed by combining the doctrines of the single names. However, this combination must be done in the godly Biblical way. Therefore, the reader is encouraged to look at the web pages for the proper Biblical doctrine, which comes from studying every instance of the combined name, and not by just making up their own combination.

When it comes to “Christ” being our “Saviour”, we must consider His role in our initial salvation and also in our ongoing salvation (“God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth” [**2Thessalonians 2:13**]). For our initial salvation, “Christ” did nothing, since that role has nothing to do with the lost. In our ongoing salvation, “the blood of Christ” and “the cross of Christ” pays for the sins which we do after becoming a child of God. This is so that we are not spending our time always paying for our ongoing sinful life. Instead, “Christ” takes care of those sins and tells us to concentrate on learning to become like Him. As we truly obey Him in our spiritual maturing, we will sin less and do more to build the “kingdom of God” in this world.

IV. Lord Jesus

The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name and is: “Jesus” shows us how to live in this flesh using the power of the Holy Ghost. Adding “Lord”, to the front of this title, lets us know that we will be judged for how well we personally follow the example of “Jesus”.

There are several verses, in the Bible, where “Jesus” and “Lord” used in the same verse but used separately. (Please see the [Verses](#) web page for links to those verses.) Those verses have a different doctrine meaning than the verses which use “Lord Jesus”. Please be sure to look at those verses as they have some ‘meat doctrine’ which is disputed by ministers of Satan and which is unknown, or denied, by many saved who have been deceived.

The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name. “Jesus” is our example of how to live in the flesh using the power of the “Holy Ghost”. “Lord” is: ‘our judge’. Therefore, the doctrine of this combined name is: ‘Jesus makes laws for us to obey in this flesh and judges us for our level of obedience’. In addition, “Jesus” deals with us on a personal level and “Lord Jesus” gives different personal commands to different saved people. However, “Lord” is “no respecter of persons”. Therefore, the exact same scale of measurement of our obedience to the personal commands will be used for every person. That is: some preacher will not be allowed to slide on some disobedience while a non-preacher is punished for the same type of disobedience.

There are only thirty-three (33) verses which use this title without also including “Christ”. The first time that the Bible uses this title is after the resurrection, which is after “Jesus” took back His power and authority as “Lord” and God while in Hell. (This truth has already been explained.) Thus, the doctrine of this name is: ‘the literal physical man, Who is God in human flesh, is exercising His power and authority as Lord’.

Basically, since “Jesus” lived in the flesh, he understands the “infirmities” (**Hebrews 4**), of the flesh. It also means that when we are judged by Him, He will know what we were capable of doing but refused to do because of temptations of this world and of our flesh. We will not get away with lying to Him about our own abilities. The doctrine of this name also means that anything that he commands us to do, using this title, is part of His law and something that we will be judged for how well we obey such commands.

V. Lord Christ

The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name and is: ‘Christ shows us how to mature spiritually after we become a child of God. Adding “Lord”, to the front of this title, lets us know that we will be judged for how well we personally obey these commands to mature spiritually’.

The [Verses](#) web page has links to verses which use both of these titles. However, the verses where it could be argued that “Lord” and “Christ” were referring to different persons in the Trinity were not include.

The exact phrase of “Lord Christ” only occurs in **Colossians 3:24**. However, there several verses which use the roles of “Lord” and “Christ” together and provide the following doctrines:

- “Christ” is “Lord”.
- “Lord” and “Christ” are two different persons of the Trinity.
- “Lord” and “Christ” are used separately in the same verse to emphasize the differences between the two roles.
- The commands of “Christ” are designed to purify and spiritually mature have the weight of God's law (as “Lord”) behind them but require more righteousness than the Law requires.

The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name and is: ‘we will be judged for how well we personally obeyed the personal commands given to us by the Son of God through His roles as Christ. Since all such commands are designed to make us mature spiritually, this amounts to a judgment of the level of spiritual maturity that we achieve while in this physical reality’.

VI. Jesus Christ

The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name and is: ‘The saved are to personally follow and obey the personal example of Jesus for how to live in the flesh and are to personally follow and obey the personal commandments of Christ in order to grow spiritually. The blessings associated with this role are made available to all saved at their initial profession but require spiritual maturing in order to increase them in our personal life’. For example, part of the doctrine associated with this role of the Son of God is that salvation is started with the ministry of “Jesus” and is then perfected through the ministry of “Christ”. While the Bible references which use this role do provide emphasis on spiritual maturing after initial salvation, the emphasis is not as great as it is with references which use “Christ Jesus”. For example, “grace and truth” are provided through this role. We receive some of each at our initial salvation but we must spiritually mature in order for “grace and truth” to increase in our life.

VII. Christ Jesus

The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name and is: ‘The doctrine of this role is like the doctrine of the role of Jesus Christ with the exception that emphasis is on the spiritual maturing which is

through the role of Christ. The blessings associated with this role are available to all saved but only after they personally mature'. When we are told about things that we receive after profession, which are not directly linked to what we received at our initial profession, then the title of "Christ" is used without "Jesus" being included. For example, spiritual gifts like teaching (**Romans 12**) come from "Christ" and are not directly linked to our initial profession. Not everyone is given the spiritual gift of teaching. (This is an important doctrinal difference to understand as it is easily overlooked.) However, if a spiritual gift is available to all saved (directly linked to what we received at our initial profession), then "Christ Jesus" is used. In addition, if a spiritual gift is given to only a few saved people, but is not available to other saved people, then "Christ" is used by itself. For example, "pastors and teachers" is a spiritual gift given only to some churches (**Ephesians 4:11**) and, by extension, this spiritual gift is not available to all saved. However, the spiritual gifts of "no condemnation" (**Romans 8:1**), and "the love of God" (**Romans 8:39**) and other similar things are given to all saved, are directly linked to our initial profession, but also increase with the spiritual maturity of the Christian through the ongoing relationship that they have with the Son of God through His role as "Christ".

Every referenced to "Christ Jesus" teaches us about spiritual blessings that are increased in proportion with our spiritual maturity after our initial profession. Philippians tells us about God's ongoing love for us, and therefore, uses "Christ Jesus" to emphasize His love since our initial profession. 1Timothy and 2Timothy are instructions to pastors, who have a primary job of seeing to the maturing of saints after profession. Ephesians tell the saved person the additional blessings that they have access to in "Christ". In Ephesians, "Christ" is used to tell us about things that not all saved receive. "Christ Jesus" is used to tell us about things that all saved receive, but which God then increases for each Christian based upon their spiritual maturity. All of the other verses that use "Christ Jesus", in that epistle, are doctrinal statements about things that all saved receive, but which are then perfected by the ongoing ministry of Christ.

In addition to these other considerations for the role of "Christ Jesus", this role is also associated with the proof that "Jesus" is "Christ" and that He fulfilled all of the Old Testament requirements so that He could fulfill the role of "Christ" in the New Testament.

VIII. Lord Jesus Christ

The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name and is: 'We will be judged for how well we personally obeyed the personal commands given to us by the Son of God through His roles as Jesus and as Christ'.

The role / title of "Lord Jesus Christ" occurs 106 times. Most of the times it is used to let us know about a combination of blessings that come through each of God's roles: that of "Lord", "Jesus" and of "Christ". Often, especially in Ephesians, the role / title of "Lord Jesus Christ" is linked to God ("the Father") to let us know that God the Father is only dealing with man through our "Lord Jesus Christ". "Jesus" said, in **John 14:6** "no man cometh unto the Father, but by me. John 5:22 says For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son". These and other verses support this claim that "God the Father" is, in this age, dealing with man only through the "Lord Jesus Christ".

Most often the order of the Son of God's name in the Bible, for this role / title, is "Lord Jesus Christ". As seen in other places, the order is important. As lost sinners, we first have to approach the "Lord" first in order to clear up our legal problem due to sin. After we agree with the "Lord" that we are guilty, then He can apply the sacrifice of "Jesus" to clear the Heavenly legal record and then provide the cleansing and perfecting ministry of "Christ" to make us suitable citizens of Heaven. The exceptions to the standard order of our "Lord Jesus Christ's" name are:

1. (**Acts 2:36**) "Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made that same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ."

- The Jews knew Him as the man named Jesus. Peter had to tell them that He was also both “Lord” and “Christ”. Notice that Peter names “Lord” before he names “Christ”. Peter is telling them that they will be judged by this man that they crucified. However, if they take care of the legal problem involved with their “Lord”, then they can start to receive the promised blessings that God (in the Old Testament) told them would be available through “Christ” / “Messiah / Messiah”.
2. **(Acts 10:36)** “The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)”
 - This is what Peter said to Cornelius. Cornelius knew about the man named “Jesus” and also knew the Old Testament teachings about “Christ”. Peter started with Cornelius’ knowledge and immediately told Cornelius that the man named “Jesus” was also “Lord of all”. As a soldier, Cornelius would understand the implications of getting right with the “Lord of all”.
 3. **(Romans 6:11)** “Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord.”
 - “Jesus Christ our Lord” appears 10 times in the Bible. In every occurrence the verse is a doctrinal statement to the saved telling us of how our relationship to God should mature since our initial profession and that we will face judgment by our “Lord” for how much we let “Jesus Christ” spiritually mature us after our initial profession. Each of these verses deal with cases where people are tempted to claim that God is giving us too hard of a task to do. In these cases, “Lord” is used as the ultimate human leader. Someone might complain that a Spirit (God the Father) can’t understand how difficult it is to not respond (to be dead) to sin. But, since “Jesus” is ‘God in human flesh’, “Jesus” knows the human problems with overcoming the temptations of sin.
 4. **(Romans 8:38-39)** “For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.”
 - “Christ Jesus our Lord” appears 8 times in the Bible. In every occurrence the verse is a doctrinal statement telling the saved how they have a legal right to a blessing that is only received if they are spiritually matured by “Christ”. These blessings are only to saved people who have spiritually matured after their initial profession. These blessings also increase with spiritual maturity. They are also guaranteed as a legal right by our “Lord”. For example, all who become U.S. citizens have a legal right to start their own business, but not all do so. **Romans 8:38-39** is a result of **John 10:24-29** where the Jews asked “Jesus” if He was the “Christ” and His answer was that “He gave eternal life to His sheep, which heard His voice”. All who are saved (His sheep) have a legal right to all of the rewards of “eternal life” even while still in this life. However, only those that meet the additional requirements of spiritually maturing in Christ actually receive the blessings.

IX. Son

The doctrine of this name is: ‘A son receives the character of the Father’. Paul trained many preachers but he only called three (“Timothy”, “Titus”, and “Onesimus”) “son”. None were his physical descendant but all received his character in the ministry. For what it is worth, one of these three is probably the author of Hebrews but God deliberately hid who that author was and people waste time arguing about what cannot be solved instead of doing the ‘Great Commission’.

John 1:12-13 tells us “But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name: Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God”. Obviously, the “sons of God”, in these verses, is not limited to males. When we combine this verse with **Romans 8:14** (“For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God”), we see that true Biblical “sons of God are led by the Spirit of God”, which makes them have the same “spirit” as their Father. Further, those who refuse to be “led by the Spirit of God” cannot claim to be the sons of God. We also see this in **John 21:15-17** where three times “Jesus saith to Simon Peter, Simon, son of

Jonas". Like "Jonas", Peter had run away from the ministry that God called him to. In fact, **John 21:3** tells us of Peter's decision to leave the ministry. Also, like "Jonas", God planned to use Peter to bring many people to salvation. For those who don't know it, "Jonas" reportedly preached the message that resulted in the greatest number of people being saved in all of the Old Testament. While I could go on, I will quit with one more reference. In **John 14:7** we read "If ye had known me, ye should have known my Father also: and from henceforth ye know him, and have seen him". This is just before Philip saith unto him, "Lord, shew us the Father, and it sufficeth us" (**John 14:8**). Most people know the rest of the story where Jesus tells them / us that He revealed the "Spirit of the Father" so much that looking at His life was seeing the Father. This is the same truth that Paul meant when he declared "For to me to live is Christ" in **Philippians 1:21**. Hopefully, people can understand why I say that the Bible uses "son" to describe a person who has a spirit like their father.

As Son, the Son of God did not deal with our initial salvation because He dealt with that problem through His other roles. As for our ongoing salvation, the more we learn to be like Him, and receive the character of God, the less we will sin and the more we will do to build the "kingdom of God" in this world. In this aspect, the role of "Son" is like the role of "Son".

X. Son of God

The doctrine of this name is: 'The second member of the Trinity and the member who took on human flesh'. In the Bible, "Son of God" can be sub-categorized as a type of "Son". The word "of" means: 'belongs to'. Therefore, the "Son of God" is 'a being Who shows us the character which belongs to God'.

We are told that the "Son of God" is "Jesus", "Christ", "Jesus Christ", "Saviour" and "Lord". That means that the characteristics of each of these other roles belong to the "Son of God" and that the characteristics of the "Son of God" belong to each of these other roles.

We are also told that "God the Father" is also "Saviour" and "Lord". Therefore, we can see how the "Son of God" is like "God the Father". (This truth should help people understand the doctrine of the Trinity.) In addition, the Jews clearly understood from the Old Testament that "Christ" would be the "Son of God" because only the "Son of God" would have the power and authority to be able to do the things that were prophesied about "Christ". Since "Jesus" is "Christ", the "Son of God" is "Jesus", the roles of "Christ" and "Jesus Christ" also matches the "Son of God". Further, as already noted above, "Jesus" acted like God the Father so much that He declared that He revealed the Father in **John 14**. In addition, to these facts, we are told in **Hebrews 7:3** that "Melchisedec" was a type of the "Son of God" so that Old Testament saints would have an example. We are also told that Adam was a "son of God" (**Luke 3:38**), but a lower-case "son" was used for Adam just like it is used for all saved people.

XI. Son of Man

The doctrine of this name is: 'The human manifestation of God displaying His human attributes'. The Bible uses "Son of man" when emphasizing the human "soul" of the "Son of God". Our "soul" is the long-term way that we think, the way that we make decisions and the way that we react emotionally to the circumstances of this life. This is the same as our "heart" except that our "heart" is the short-term version of the same things.

"We are told that the "Son of man" is: "Lord", "Jesus", "Christ", "Saviour" and 'God in human flesh'. We are told that the "Son of man" has physically returned to Heaven. The term of "Son of man" is used to emphasize His human nature. The Bible tells us that, while His body was put into the ground, the "Son of man" would be "three days and three nights in the heart of the earth" (Hell) [**Matthew 12:39-41; 16:4; Luke 11:29-30, 32; John 21:15-17**]. That is, His soul and spirit went to Hell for us. While His Spirit came from God and His body came from Mary, His soul (mind, will and emotions) were human and trained just like ours are. This is what **Hebrews 5** teaches us. **Hebrews 5:8** says He "learned he obedience" and **Hebrews 5:28** says "Who can have compassion on the ignorant, and on them that are out of the way; for that he

himself also is compassed with infirmity". Our soul is what makes us different from all animals and is the identifying part of us as humans.

XII. Son of David

The doctrine of this name is: 'The human man prophesied as a descendent of King David who would be Messiah'.

There are several verses which use "Son of David" and which tell us that the "Son of David" is "Lord", "Jesus" and "Christ". "Son of David" was another Jewish name for the Messiah. Basically, these verses show the basis of the Jewish belief that "Christ" would be the "Son of God" and "Lord" and a human man ("Jesus"), although they did not know His human name of "Jesus".

The role of "Messiah / Messias" is often associated with the role of a prophet, which is the messenger from God, in the Old Testament. Part of "Jesus" fulfilling the Old Testament prophecies was all of the miracles that He did and all of the teaching that He did. These activities are what is related to every usage of the title "Christ" within the Gospels. And, yes, as a prophet "Jesus" did foretell the future. However, it is religion which limits the role of prophet to that one activity. The main function of a prophet was to bring a message from God, especially when the religious leaders were teaching religion in place of the message from God (**Matthew 15:6; Mark 7:13; Romans 4:14; Romans 9:6; 1Corinthians 1:17; Galatians 3:17**). While the religious leaders objected to the idea of "Jesus" ruling over them, they mainly objected to His correcting their religious doctrine, which was His right as the "Son of David".

While there are many similarities in the prophecies of "Christ" / "Messiah" and of "Son of David", the phrase "Son of David" is more often used in a similar way to "Lord" and / or "King" since king David is mainly known as the best king that the Jewish people and king David was promised by God that his physical descendent would rule Israel. Thus, the Jews understood the emphasis on the "Son of David" being their ruler.

XIII. Saviour

The doctrine of this name is: 'The Being Who provides anything related to our spiritual salvation'. The doctrinal meaning of the word "Saviour" is best understood by considering the meaning of the word 'parent'. It takes more than one parent to create and to raise a child with each parent having different tasks to do in both, the conception and in the raising of the child to be a productive member of society. Likewise, the Bible teaches that our "Saviour" is God the Father, the God the Holy Ghost, The Son as Lord, the Son as Jesus and the Son as Christ with each having different roles in our salvation.

While I cannot prove it, I personally believe that the spelling of this role of God is deliberately made different from the similar word in common English language usage in order to point out the difference in meaning from the common usage word.

God the Father is our "Saviour":

In the Old Testament we are told that God is the "Saviour" and that He saved the Jews from Egypt, among the many times and places that He saved them. God worked through Moses, and other men, which the Jews understood. So, while Moses and other men were called "Saviour", the Jews understood that it was really God working through that man and the true "Saviour" was God Himself. They also understood that a "Saviour" would get them out of their problems and change their circumstances. That's why they were looking for the promised "prophet that would be like Moses" (**Genesis 49:10; Deuteronomy 18:15-18; Matthew 11:3; 21:11; Luke 7:16; 24:19; John 1:21; 4:19, 25; 7:40; Acts 3:22-24; 7:37**). While Joshua was also a type of "Saviour", the Jews understood that he wasn't the promised one and they understood that the promised "prophet like Moses" / "Saviour" would bring in God's kingdom. They understood that they would rule and reign in the world, they were looking for their "Saviour" to change their circumstances. However, they refused their "Saviour" and "King"

because they wanted to tell Him what to do, just like Satan wanted to tell God what to do (**Isaiah 14:12-19**). The religious leaders, like most religious leaders of today, proved that they truly preached the “doctrines of devils” (**1Timothy 4:1**)” instead of the true doctrine from the Bible.

So now we come to the New Testament and find that people have not changed. **Matthew 1:21** tells us “thou shalt call his name JESUS: for he shall save his people from their sins”. The religious crowd will tell you that “JESUS” means “Saviour”. They will preach that he will remove the consequences of sin but deny God’s message that He will remove the sin itself. You see, the religious man wants to keep on sinning and wants a “Saviour” who will remove all consequences while he lives a life that mocks God (**Galatians 6:7**). What the Bible truly teaches about our “Saviour” is that He removes the consequences of sin by removing the sin itself. If we refuse to stop sinning, we are refusing our “Saviour” just as much as the Jews did.

We already saw how God the Father was the “Saviour” of the Jews. He also is the “Saviour” of all who are saved today since He provides the power and the plan for our personal salvation. In addition, the “Son of God” is our “Saviour” in each of His three (3) main roles and He provides a different function within each role. Remember that the doctrinal meaning of the word “Saviour” is best understood by considering the meaning of the word ‘parent’. It takes more than one parent to create and to raise a child with each parent having different tasks to do in both, the conception and in the raising of the child to be a productive member of society.

God the Father is our “Saviour”:

- We read this in: **Luke 1:47; 1Timothy 1:1; 2:3; 4:10; Titus 1:3; 2:10; 3:4; Jude 1:25**.
- As “Saviour”, God the Father commanded the Plan of Salvation and provides the power to enable our salvation. The main effect that we see is that God the Father commanded that the saved accept the “kingdom of God” as a replacement for their prior character of a sinful worldly person. **Romans 14:17** says “For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the holy Ghost.” Without going into all of the details we should be able to understand that we could only have true “righteousness, and peace, and joy” when we understand that God the Father included all parts of our salvation in His plan.

God the Son is Saviour:

- **Acts 5:31, 13:23; Philippians 3:20; 2Timothy 1:10; Titus 1:4; 2:13; 3:6; 2 Peter 1:1; 2:20; 3:2, 3:18 and 1John 4:14** all tells us that “God the Son” is our “Saviour” and the context makes it clear that each and every role of the Son of God is involved in our salvation. Please see below for more details.

As “Lord”, the “Son of God” is our “Saviour”:

- This role is used because sin is a violation of God’s law (**1John 3:4**). Therefore, sin must be dealt with in a legal manner that is also righteous and God deals with all legal matters through His role as “Lord”. However, there is a basic point that most people fail to understand or that they understand only partially. As already explained in this book, God has two different legal systems. Sin is a violation of God’s law in both systems but the consequence of sin is different and the method of “forgiveness” is different. And, it is mainly these two differences which cause people problems because most people have been taught doctrinal error about these concepts.

Many preachers will proclaim that all of our sins were paid for in the past. That is past, present and future sins’. That pronouncement is usually following the way of Satan is that it is a half-truth lie. The payment for the sins, and the application of that payment to our personal legal record, are two different legal actions. Think about this. If they were the same then there could be no Hell and no person going to the “lake of fire” because those are consequences of sins which were not taken care of before death. So now, instead of thinking about the payment being made, think about the payment being applied to our personal legal record in Heaven.

Romans 3:25 is part of a much larger sentence and most people take it out of context of the rest of the sentence and of the chapter. With that in mind, I will write that the use of the word “remission”, in this verse, is speaking about the legal recording of the payment of sins being applied to the legal record in Heaven. And, this doctrine is the same when we consider the full context of the rest of the sentence and of the chapter. Now, our verse specifically says that this “remission” is applied to “sins that are past”. A fuller explanation of that was given earlier and the complete explanation is found on ljc1611kiv.com. However, what is relevant to our consideration of the role of “Lord” being our “Saviour” is that this role works one way in the “great white throne” judgment for our initial salvation (we become a child of God) and another works way in the “judgment seat of Christ” system. This difference is mainly due to the different ways that “justification” is handled in each of the legal systems. The “Son of God” handles our “justification” in each court system in the manner required by each court system and He does this through His roles as “Saviour” and as “Lord”. As already explained, He “Blots out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us” (**Colossians 2:14**) for “sins that are past” in the “great white throne” judgment when we become a child of God. This is “justification” in that legal system. However, in the “judgment seat of Christ” system, we must let “Christ” “cleanse” us before we are “justified”. The “Lord” does this “justification” both legal systems as our “Saviour”. However, in the “great white throne” judgment, He is being our “Saviour” for our initial salvation and in the “judgment seat of Christ” system; He is being our “Saviour” for our ongoing personal relationship with God.

God the Son as Lord is Saviour.

- We are told this in **Luke 2:11, Philippians 3:20 and Titus 1:4**.
- As “Lord” the Son of God takes care of anything that is legal which is related to our salvation. A critical difference here is that as “Lord”, the Son of God does not deal with us in a personal manner but treats all saved people in the same way. Since He judges us as “Lord”, He would not be righteous if He considered anything personal while He is judging. As “Lord” He makes and enforces laws that all saved are to obey.
- While many people do not realize it, “mercy” is a legal term which means ‘we don't get the punishment that we deserve’. As “Lord” He blotted out the record of sins which were against us and, thereby, allowed us to be adopted as “children of God”. As “Lord”, the Son of God provides the ongoing “mercy” that is required for the salvation of our soul.
- As “Lord” He will judge us at the “judgment seat of Christ”. We do not meet “Christ” there but it is called “the judgment seat of Christ” because all people who are supposed to have the relationship that is called “Christ” will be there to be judged. As “Lord” He determines how well we did our part in the relationship that is called “Christ” and He rewards all according to their level of obedience and punishes all according to their level of disobedience.
- As “Lord” He blotted out the sin record which made our spirit salvation possible. As “Lord” he will judge us in the future and determine all of our future results of salvation including the salvation of our body. As “Lord” He decides when to punish and when to give mercy while He is trying to save our soul.

As “Jesus”, the “Son of Man” is our “Saviour”.

The term of “Son of man” is used to emphasize His human nature. The Bible uses “Son of man” when emphasizing the human soul of the Son of God. Much of this doctrine was already covered under the role of “Jesus” because the two roles are so similar. In addition to those prior comments, we see that:

- We are told that the “Son of man” is “Lord”, “Jesus”, “Christ”, “Saviour” and ‘God in human flesh’.
- While His Spirit came from God and His body came from Mary, His soul (‘mind, will and emotions’) were human and trained just like ours are. That's what **Hebrews 5** teaches us. **Hebrews 5:8** says: “learned he obedience” and **Hebrews 5:28** says” “Who can have compassion on the ignorant, and on them that are out of the way; for that he himself also is compassed with infirmity”. Our soul is what makes us different from all animals and is the identifying part of us as humans.

- He provides for our initial salvation, because He, as a literal physical man, was crucified and died to pay the penalty for our sins.
- He is also our “Saviour” for our ongoing personal relationship with God in that He is our example of how to live in this world without sinning.
- This is the “buried” part of the gospel which is often neglected. When He was “buried” he was separated from this world and the temptations of sin could not move Him. Likewise, part of our true Biblical salvation is to stop responding to the temptations of sin by following the example of “Jesus”.
- While His body was put into the ground, the “Son of man” would be “three days and three nights in the heart of the earth” (Hell) [**Matthew 12:39-41; 16:4; Luke 11:29-30, 32; John 21:15-17**]. That is, His soul and Spirit went to Hell for us while His body was buried in the tomb.
- We are told that the “Son of man” has physically returned to Heaven.
- “Jesus” is the name of a literal physical man within the Bible and, as a literal physical man, “Jesus” provided salvation. **1Corinthians 15:21** says: “For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead”. As a literal physical man, He paid our sin debt and removed the barrier which allowed all of the rest of God’s Plan of Salvation to be made available. He also lived His physical life in this flesh using the Power of the Holy Ghost. Thus, He became our example of how to live in this world. When we have problems with the world or our flesh, we are to look in the Gospels and see What Would Jesus Do?
- Since we each are different and relate to other physical humans on a personal basis, the role of “Jesus” deals with each of us personally. “Jesus” makes our salvation experience personal.

As “Christ”, the “Son of God” is our “Saviour”.

In order to understand this truth, the reader must first understand that true Biblical “salvation” is not just a one-time event in our life but is an ongoing personal relationship with God which starts with our accepting “Jesus Christ” as our personal “Lord”. Just as marriage is not only the ceremony but is an ongoing personal relationship which starts with the ceremony. Once this is understood, and accepted, then the person can understand how “Christ” is our “Saviour”. On ljc1611kjb.com is a message called Body, Soul and Spirit Salvation. As that message explains, God will save all three parts of us but save them different ways and at different times. Also, as explained there, the true Biblical “salvation” of our “soul” is an ongoing process which lasts until our physical death. A major part of this “salvation”, of our “soul”, is the ministry of “Christ”.

God the Son as Christ is Saviour:

- We read this truth in: **Luke 2:11; John 4:42; Ephesians 5:23; Philippians 3:20; 2Timothy 1:10; Titus 1:4; 2:13; 3:6; 2 Peter 1:1, 11; 2:20; 3:18**.
- In most of these verses we actually see the phrase “Jesus Christ”, which means that the Son of God is being our “Saviour” through His roles as “Jesus” and through His role as “Christ”.
- As “Christ” He provides for our spiritual gifts, our spiritual growth and for all things spiritual in our salvation.
- **1Corinthians 15** explains the role of “Christ” in much more detail including how “Christ” is involved in our body salvation.
- While “Christ” is the main instrument of our soul salvation, “Christ” does not actually become involved until the instant of our spirit salvation. This is like a godly man does not have any intimate relationships with others until after he is married and then only with his wife.
- Since every marriage is different and personal, “Christ” deals with each of us personally. For example, “Christ” gives different people different spiritual gifts and different jobs to do within the church and His doing this is part of our salvation which comes after our initial profession.

XIV. King

The doctrine of this name is: 'The king is the ultimate ruler of his kingdom with lords below him to enforce his rule. The king puts his character on his kingdom'.

"Lord" and "King" are very close and often are confused. Think of Joseph, after being removed from jail in Egypt, and pharaoh. "Joseph" had the role of "Lord" (**Genesis 45:9-11**) and pharaoh was "king of Egypt" (**Genesis 41:46**). The "king" rules his kingdom however he wants and answers to no one except God. As we see at the time of Moses, God can make His displeasure very clear to a "king" (pharaoh) when the "king" gets too full of pride and thinks he can ignore the laws of God.

The "Lord" does the day-to-day running of the kingdom and can make any laws and judgments that he wants so long as they are in line with the wishes of his King. Hopefully, this is adequate to explain that difference.

Directly related to a "king" is his kingdom and the type of kingdom, the type of laws and the type of people who are promoted in the kingdom all reflect the character of the King. Within the Bible, there are several kingdoms mentioned, such as the kingdom of Satan (**Matthew 12:26; Luke 11:18**). While some kingdoms do not belong to God, more than one does not belong to God. We find the "Kingdom of God" and the "Kingdom of Heaven" both belong to God and yet are different. (Realize that the word "of" means 'belongs to'. There are more things which 'belong to' God than just Heaven and the things in heaven. The "children of God" 'belong to' God even while they are in this life.) There is an important doctrinal difference between the "Kingdom of God" and the "Kingdom of Heaven". The "Kingdom of God" is to be in us today and is: 'the character of God displayed by the children of God'.

In addition, also appears as if the Son of God will rule the "Kingdom of Heaven" through His role as "Lord" and the "Kingdom of God" through His role as "Christ". That is, the "child of God" has a personal relationship through the role of "Christ" because the "Kingdom of God" is to be in us today and is supposed to be part of our ongoing personal relationship with God. God uses His role as "Christ" for the spiritual part of personal relationship. However, since God's role as "Lord" is "no respecter of persons" (**Leviticus 19:15; 2Chronicles 19:7; Acts 10:34; Romans 2:11; Colossians 3:25**), that role is not involved in the personal "Kingdom of God" while it is involved in all legal matters which are part of the "Kingdom of Heaven".

There are several Word Studies and Doctrinal Studies on ljc1611kjb.com which deal with the words "king" and "kingdom". There are links on the [Words](#) Menu web page which will take the reader to those notes which provide much more detail, more explanations and more Bible references to support what is in those notes.

d. God the holy Spirit

Please see the Word Study called [Spirit](#) and the Word Study on the Holy [Ghost](#), on ljc1611kvy.com, for links to every place where these references are found in the Bible. Both are names of the third member of the Trinity. In general, the Bible uses the title of Holy Spirit” when He is doing spiritual things and uses the title of Holy Ghost” when He is affecting things in this physical reality.

[Torrey's Topical Textbook](#) gives us ‘Titles and Names of the holy Ghost’ as:

- i. Breath of the Almighty: **Job 33:4.**
- ii. Comforter: **John 14:16; 15:26.**
- iii. Eternal Spirit: **Hebrews 9:14.**
- iv. Free Spirit: **Psalms 51:12.**
- v. God: **Acts 5:3-4.**
- vi. Good Spirit: **Nehemiah 9:20; Psalms 143:10.**
- vii. holy Spirit: **Psalms 51:11; Luke 11:13; Ephesians 1:13; 4:30.**
- viii. Lord, The: **2Thessalonians 3:5.**
- ix. Power of the Highest: **Luke 1:35.**
- x. Spirit, The: **Matthew 4:1; John 3:6; 1Timothy 4:1.**
- xi. Spirit of the Lord God: **Isaiah 61:1.**
- xii. Spirit of the Lord: **Isaiah 11:2; Acts 5:9.**
- xiii. Spirit of God: **Genesis 1:2; 1Corinthians 2:11; Job 33:4.**
- xiv. Spirit of the Father: **Matthew 10:20.**
- xv. Spirit of Christ: **Romans 8:9; 1Peter 1:11.**
- xvi. Spirit of the Son: **Galatians 4:6.**
- xvii. Spirit of life: **Romans 8:2; Revelation 11:11.**
- xxviii. Spirit of grace: **Zechariah 12:10; Hebrews 10:29.**
- xix. Spirit of prophecy: **Revelation 19:10.**
- xx. Spirit of adoption: **Romans 8:15.**
- xxi. Spirit of wisdom: **Isaiah 11:2; Ephesians 1:17.**
- xxii. Spirit of counsel: **Isaiah 11:2.**
- xxiii. Spirit of might: **Isaiah 11:2.**
- xxiv. Spirit of understanding: **Isaiah 11:2.**
- xxv. Spirit of knowledge: **Isaiah 11:2.**
- xxvi. Spirit of the fear of the Lord: **Isaiah 11:2.**
- xxvii. Spirit of truth: **John 14:17; 15:26.**
- xxviii. Spirit of holiness: **Romans 1:4.**
- xxix. Spirit of revelation: **Ephesians 1:17.**
- xxx. Spirit of judgment: **Isaiah 4:4; 28:6.**
- xxxi. Spirit of burning: **Isaiah 4:4.**
- xxxii. Spirit of glory: **1Peter 4:14.**
- xxxiii. Seven Spirits of God: **Revelation 1:4.**

Below are a couple of messages, which I received, and pass onto the reader.

The holy Spirit's Ministry: Identifying the Children of God

“The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God.” ([Romans 8:16](#))

Paul presents a magnificent section in Romans 8 on the resources of the believer.

- He begins with an affirmation that the holy Spirit has been tasked to bear witness with our spirit that we are the actual children of God.
- No less than 13 times does the phrase “children of God” appear in the New Testament, all written in one way or another to confirm that we “are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus” ([Galatians 3:26](#)).

Obviously, this does not apply to all humanity, as some would assert.

- None other than Jesus Himself stated that the wicked Pharisees and Sadducees were “of your father the devil” ([John 8:44](#)).
- The apostle John made the difference crystal clear:
“In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother” ([1John 3:10](#)).

The children of God are peacemakers ([Matthew 5:9](#))

- And according to the Lord Jesus are “equal unto the angels” because they are “the children of the resurrection” ([Luke 20:36](#)).
- Furthermore, none other than the Creator Himself promises to “gather together in one the children of God that were scattered abroad” ([John 11:52](#)).

Finally, this is how each of us can know that we are, indeed, the children of God:

- “That we love the children of God,
- When we love God,
- And keep his commandments” ([1John 5:2](#)). HMM III

The holy Spirit's Ministry: Verifying Our Relationship with Christ

“And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.” ([Romans 8:17](#))

Since it is obvious that we are children of God by the internal ministry of the holy Spirit to our spirit,

- Then it follows that we are “heirs of God.”
- Paul states it should be equally obvious that we must be “joint-heirs” with God’s only begotten Son, the Lord Jesus (today’s text).

It is noteworthy that Paul recognizes that one of the sure signs of our relationship with Christ is that “we suffer with him.”

- Paul warned: “All that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution” ([2Timothy 3:12](#)).
- That was promised by our Lord Himself when He said, “If they have persecuted me, they will also persecute you” ([John 15:20](#)).

But—and here is the great promise—we will “be also glorified together” ([Romans 8:17](#)).

- All our present sufferings pale in comparison to “the glory which shall be revealed in us” ([Romans 8:18](#)).
- When our Lord Jesus was delivering the simple Beatitudes as He introduced His magnificent Sermon on the Mount, He ended them with the note that we would be persecuted ([Matthew 5:11](#)).
- However, we were to “rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven: for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you” ([Matthew 5:12](#)). HMM III

9. Jesus and Devils

Devils are spiritual beings who lie and deceive people and do other evil things. They also get people to participate in their lies and deception. The main example is the doctrine of 'Demonology', which is a lie from devils which even 'good godly independent fundamental KJV only Baptist preachers' hold onto. And, when I have pointed out the doctrinal error to several such preachers, they each clung to their religious traditions instead of letting the "word of God" correct their doctrine and Bible vocabulary. Now, while this is not one of the fundamental doctrines of the Bible, we can see how this, and similar doctrinal errors, have led to America turning their back on God. **1Corinthians 5:6** and **Galatians 5:9** tell us "A little leaven leaveneth the whole lump." The word "leaven" is used symbolically for 'doctrinal error' in those Bible references. In this case, the switching of the Bible word of "devil" to 'daemon' has reduced God's commandment for His people to beware of the "doctrines of devils" (**1Timothy 4:1**).

When preachers use the word 'daemon' for the Biblical word of "devil", they are teaching God's people that it is OK to use a worldly definition for a Bible word. This error is the basis of many doctrinal errors which are accepted by God's people. In addition, when preachers tell God's people that 'daemons' are the spiritual beings to truly fear, and then they read what the Bible says about "devils", there is a disconnect, in the people's mind, between the Bible warning and what they think are the spiritual beings to truly fear. Then, you add in the teaching from the world that devils are these mischievous, but harmless, characters or are evil looking monsters that humans can defeat; you get a lessening, or even ignoring, of the Bible warning. As a result, God's people are harmed by devils and blame God for not protecting them when, in fact, they personally ignored God's protection when they ignored God's warning.

Please see the section called [Jesus and Devils](#) within the Doctrinal Study called [Significant Gospel Events](#), on [ljc162121kjb.com](#), for references to where the Bible tells us that Jesus dealt with devils. The said reference study is incomplete, at this time, but it provides many references and probably has more references than most people will use. In addition, the Word Study on [Spirit](#), on [ljc162121kjb.com](#), has a section called [Other Spirits](#), which are devils. That section not only has references to every place in the New Testament which deals with these "other spirits", but it also has links to notes where each reference is explained with consideration of the context and of the doctrine which is the same across the Bible. Further, the Doctrinal Study called [False things according to the Bible](#), on [ljc162121kjb.com](#), has several sections on different types of people who are actually ministers of devils.

In **Mark 1:25** and **Luke 4:35** we read: "And Jesus rebuked him, saying, Hold thy peace, and come out of him." In these references "Jesus" was speaking to a devil. Other Gospel references tell us similar things. In **Acts 16:16-19** we read about Paul dealing with a devil in a similar manner. In all of these references, devils were recommending the man of God to people and the man of God rejected the recommendation. This recommendation led credence to the claim, by the Jewish religious leaders, that Jesus "hath Beelzebub, and by the prince of the devils casteth he out devils". When God's people let themselves be associated with devils, or even with the false ministers of devils, they create the condition where people will believe a claim that they are also a minister of a devil. As we see in our references, this is true even if God's man only accepts the recommendation from a devil or a minister of a devil. This accusation becomes even more believable if the man of God works with such. Therefore, the main lesson, from the Bible, is to have nothing to do with any devil or with any minister of a devil. And, as already mentioned, even accepting their teaching, such as using the word 'daemon', taints us and our ministry.

10. The Ten Commandments and the “Greatest Commandment”

This is another area where I have not, yet, completed a deep study. Nevertheless, there is enough information for the beginning Bible student to have some basic understanding of these doctrines. There are references in the Doctrinal Study called Significant Gospel Events, on ljc162121kiv.com, within the section called Jesus and the Ten Commandments which deal with this subject and can help the Bible student who wishes to do a deeper study.

The “Greatest Commandment” is not part of the “Ten Commandments” but is stated, in different words, in **Deuteronomy 6:4; 10:12; 30:6**. We are told that this is the “Greatest Commandment” in **Matthew 22:36,38; Mark 12:29-33** and **Luke 10:25-28**. It is: “Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy strength, and with all thy mind; and thy neighbour as thyself”. This is the spiritual basis of the “Ten Commandments” and of all of the Mosaic Law. In particular, it is the spiritual basis of the Moral part of all of the Mosaic Law, which was established before Moses lived and is based upon the promises of God to Abraham and others. The Moral part of all of the Mosaic Law was never done away with, as explained in the earlier section of this book called Testaments: Old and New.

Reportedly, the Jewish religious leaders took each of the commandments, which were in the Mosaic Law, and divided them between the positive (“Thou shalt”) and the negative (“Thou shalt not”). They then gave them a weight, according to their religious reasoning and this commandment came out as the heaviest / greatest. Since “Jesus” did not object to this designation, like He did object to their erroneous religious doctrines, neither should we object to this designation.

Now, switching to the ‘Ten Commandments’, we see several truths and we see religious groups teaching various errors about them. The first thing to note is that all but one is part of the Moral Law, within the Mosaic Law. The one, “Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.” (**Exodus 20:8; Deuteronomy 5:16**), is part of the Religious Law, within the Mosaic Law. The Religious Law was replaced by the New Testament, as explained in the earlier section of this book called Testaments: Old and New. Further, “Christ” is a role of the Son of God which only deals with the saved during the ‘Church Age’. Therefore, these religions are lying when they claim to be “Christian” because, in order to be saved and have an ongoing personal relationship with “Christ”, a person must accept that he did away with the Religious Law, within the Mosaic Law.

Colossians 2:16-17 says: “Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holyday, or of the new moon, or of the sabbath *days*: Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body *is* of Christ.” (The note for this sentence, on ljc1611kiv.com, fully explains the context and significance of the earlier parts of the chapter.) The phrase “Let no man therefore judge you” means: ‘Don’t let anyone tell you that you commit sins for not following their religious rules about these things’. In addition, the “therefore”, of this phrase, means: ‘as a direct consequence of what was said earlier in the chapter’. There we read “As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, *so* walk ye in him” (**Colossians 2:6**), and other things which tell us to obey the personal commands of “Christ Jesus the Lord” (“*so* walk ye in him”) instead of following the religious rules of other people. And, as explained in the Message (on ljc1611kiv.com), called Lord of the Sabbath, “Jesus Christ” has the legal right to change the religious laws about the sabbath, which He did when He eliminated this commandment for the ‘Church Age’.

Moving on, the note for **Matthew 12:8**, in the Lord Jesus Christ Study (on ljc1611kiv.com), has links to notes about every place that “Jesus” dealt with the sabbath, divided by how He dealt with it. In those

gospel references, we see that He did not give it the emphasis that the religious leaders did. In addition, the note for **Colossians 2:16-17** (on lhc1611kjv.com), mentions that 'there are about 50 sabbath days which are in addition to Saturday' and these are called "high sabbath" days. However, the religions which claim that we are to keep the sabbath days don't even recognize these "high sabbath" days. Therefore, they are not obeying their own religious rules.

Now, another doctrinal error, which some teach, is that Sunday is the sabbath. This error comes from ignorance and people not studying what the Bible actually teaches. True Biblical churches meet on Sunday to celebrate the resurrection of the Lord. The sabbath is a rest day ordered by God the Father and that is totally different from the celebration and worship that a true church does on Sunday.

Now, hopefully the reader has enough direct information and links to additional information, to understand that sabbath is not part of the New Testament. One thing that people should understand is that these false religions tell their people that they will go to heaven for keeping the 'Ten Commandments' and that they do so by obeying their particular religious rules. I have yet to meet anyone who claims to believe they are going to Heaven by keeping the 'Ten Commandments', and who can also name more than two of them. Obviously, then cannot keep commandments which they cannot even name. Now, with that written, we will take a quick look at the other of the 'Ten Commandments'. One thing about them is that they can be thought of like a 'Table of Contents' for the rest of the Moral Law, with the rest of the Moral Law filling in the details.

1. "I am the LORD thy God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage. Thou shalt have no other gods before me." (**Exodus 20:2-3; Deuteronomy 5:7**).
Please notice that, in this commandment, the word "gods" is lower-case while the "Son of God" is upper-case. The 'is' in lower-case ("gods") refers to devils while the upper-case "Son of God" is God. Now, if someone is charged with a crime, they do not stand before the judge and answer for themselves but have a lawyer to represent them and "stand before" the judge. The doctrine from the Roman Catholic Church, and other religious groups, which require people to pray to 'Mary and the saints' is a requirement that they have these lower-case word "gods" stand "before" God to represent them in direct violation of this first commandment.
2. "Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth: Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me; And shewing mercy unto thousands of them that love me, and keep my commandments." (**Exodus 20:4-6; Deuteronomy 5:8-10**).
The Roman Catholic Church claims that their statues and pictures are not idols, like other religions have, because theirs are a different shape and represent 'Mary and the saints' instead of false "gods". People have to turn off their brains to accept that doctrine. Anyone who truly thinks about what "any graven image, or any likeness of any thing" means should understand how that doctrine violates this commandment. In addition, their 'crucifix' still has their 'Jesus' still on the cross, in violation of the symbolic representation of the true gospel. Their 'crucifix' symbolically denies the burial, which symbolically represents our separation from sin. In addition, 'crucifix' symbolically denies the resurrection, which symbolically represents our agreement to "walk in newness of life" (**Romans 6:4**). However, their 'crucifix' does symbolically represent their doctrine that people can live a life of sin and expect their 'Jesus' to pay all of the costs if the people give enough money to the Roman Catholic Church or show up and 'confess their sins' to the priest often enough.
3. "Thou shalt not take the name of the LORD thy God in vain; for the LORD will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain." (**Exodus 20:7; Deuteronomy 5:11**).

This is one that even most saved people fail to think about. When we call ourselves “Christian”, we are “taking the name of the LORD thy God”. When we put on an outer show but do not have the inner character of “Christ”, then we are ‘claiming’ that “name...in vain”.

4. “Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.” (**Exodus 20:8-11; Deuteronomy 5:12-15**).
This commandment was dealt with earlier.
5. “Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the LORD thy God giveth thee” (**Exodus 20:12; Deuteronomy 5:16**).
This is a commandment where the obedience to it is actually based upon culturally accepted practices instead of upon the true teaching of the Bible. In America, most people put their parents in ‘old age homes’ and forget about them. In some European countries, and other places, they euthanize the parents to ‘put them out of their misery’.
6. “Thou shalt not kill.” (**Exodus 20:13; Deuteronomy 5:17**).
The Roman Catholic Church, and other religious groups, have people arguing about the differences between ‘murder’ and ‘accidental killing’ when it comes to this commandment. However, “Jesus” said: “Ye have heard that it was said by them of old time, Thou shalt not kill; and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment: But I say unto you, That whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment: and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council: but whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.” (**Matthew 5:21-22**). Therefore, this religious argument is about two things which are far from the application of this commandment which “Jesus” gives to us.
7. “Thou shalt not commit adultery.” (**Exodus 20:14; Deuteronomy 5:18**).
Most people should realize that every time that the Jewish religious leaders picked a doctrinal fight with “Jesus”, their doctrine was always wrong. Yet, almost everyone uses the doctrine from the Jewish religious leaders, which they used to pick a doctrinal fight with “Jesus”, as their definition for the word “adultery”. Please see the [Word Study on Adultery](http://ljc1611kjb.com), on ljc1611kjb.com, for the true Biblical definition of the word “adultery”, and thereby find the true understanding of this commandment.
8. “Thou shalt not steal.” (**Exodus 20:15; Deuteronomy 5:19**).
There are lots of people who make excuses for disobeying this commandment such as: ‘I was only borrowing it’ or ‘Fraud is not really stealing’.
9. “Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.” (**Exodus 20:16; Deuteronomy 5:20**).
Hello gossips.
10. “Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour’s house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbour’s wife, nor his manservant, nor his maidservant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor any thing that is thy neighbour’s.” (**Exodus 20:17; Deuteronomy 5:21**).
How many people want to go to America?

11. Covenants

The Biblical definition of the word “covenant” is: ‘a contract that is made by swearing an oath which is recognized by the court of God and the covenant is enforced by God’. There are many different definitions in dictionaries written by men and those definitions try to accommodate definitions made and used by men in this world, which usually allow violations which the Bible definition does not allow.

There are several covenants in the Bible, such as the one God made with Abraham. And, there are books that deal with those covenants. However, this book will only deal with the most important covenant that exists.

The most important covenant that exists is salvation. The most important thing for saved people to understand about “covenants” is that true Biblical salvation is a covenant agreement. The only power that can make you a citizen of another country is the government of that country. In every case, you must swear an oath accepting their authority over you, their right to make laws telling you what to do and what to not do, their right to judge your obedience to those laws, and their right to punish disobedience. In exchange, the person receives the right of citizenship including the right to live within the area that the government rules over.

We become citizens of Heaven in a similar way, **Romans 10:13** says: “For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.” When we “call upon the name” we are trusting in the power and authority represented by that name. The only person who has the power and authority to make someone a citizen of Heaven and a child of God is “the Lord Jesus Christ”. When we accept Him as our personal “Lord”, we are making a covenant agreement with Him to accept Him as our personal Lord. In exchange, He blots out the Heavenly legal record of our sins, He adopts us as children of God, He makes us a citizen of Heaven, and we are assured of our everlasting right to be in Heaven when we leave this physical reality.

However, with those rights, we also agree, whether we realize it or not, to accept the rights of “the Lord Jesus Christ” to make laws telling you what to do and what to not do, His right to judge your obedience to those laws, and His right to punish disobedience. During the ‘Church Age’, the truly saved receive the indwelling “holy Spirit” and personal commandments are passed from “the Lord Jesus Christ” to those saved people who are spiritually mature enough to understand such personal commandments. Those saved people who are not that mature receive commandments through their ‘spiritual mother’, which is the church. In all cases, such commandments are in line with what the Bible literally says and are designed to make all of God’s children to have a character like God’s character. This is designed to make us live in holiness and righteousness, and to be like “Jesus” in service and sacrifice and to be like “Christ” in spiritual maturity.

Hebrews 10:28-31 says: “He that despised Moses’ law died without mercy under two or three witnesses: Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace? For we know him that hath said, Vengeance *belongeth* unto me, I will recompense, saith the Lord. And again, The Lord shall judge his people. *It is* a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God.”

Now, lots of people like to take different parts of this passage to preach, but few consider it as a whole and within the context where it is presented. Consider:

- The phrase: “the blood of the covenant” means: ‘Jesus literally physically shed His blood on the cross as payment for this covenant’. Now consider the message of this reference with that truth in mind.

- The phrase: “who hath trodden under foot the Son of God” means: ‘this saved person added insult to the injury done to Jesus Christ when He shed His blood for them. They added insult instead of being thankful’.
- The phrase: “done despite unto the Spirit of grace” means: ‘This saved person fought against and tried to injure God’s Holy Spirit because they did not like to message from God. Instead of obeying a righteous command, they tried to kill the messenger’.
- The phrase: “He that despised Moses’ law died without mercy under two or three witnesses” is referencing the time that Korah challenged the authority of Moses and we read in **Numbers 16:32-33**: “And the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed them up, and their houses, and all the men that *appertained* unto Korah, and all *their* goods. They, and all that *appertained* to them, went down alive into the pit, and the earth closed upon them: and they perished from among the congregation.” Notice that not only the men who sinned were punished but “all the men that *appertained* unto Korah, and all *their* goods” were destroyed by God. We do not live nor die to ourselves and our sin also affects those people who are around us.
- Now consider the phrase: “Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy” with the prior in mind. This entire reference is warning saved people of the consequence of violating their covenant agreement made when they were saved. Not only should we consider the prior but we should also consider that our reference says: “For we know him that hath said, Vengeance *belongeth* unto me, I will recompense, saith the Lord. And again, The Lord shall judge his people”. We cannot have full assurance of everlasting salvation based upon what is written in the “word of God” in one place while also rejecting what is written in our reference.

While there is more in the Bible about our covenant agreement which is the basis of our personal salvation, but we will move on after this brief warning. After all, this is just an introductory book.

We find the exact phrase of “new covenant” in **Jeremiah 31:31**; **Hebrews 8:8,13** and **Hebrews 12:24**. **Jeremiah 31:31-34** has the promise of the “new covenant”. **Hebrews 8** explains that the “new covenant” is based upon “Jesus Christ” being our “high priest” and our dealing with God only through Him. **Hebrews 12** explains what “Jesus Christ” did in order to provide this “new covenant” for us and concludes that our responsibility, under it is: “Wherefore we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear: For our God *is* a consuming fire.” (**Hebrews 12:28-29**). That is: we are to “serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear” knowing that if we do not keep our responsibilities under this “new covenant” then we will personally experience what is meant by “our God *is* a consuming fire”.

In addition to the prior truths, **Hebrews 9** explains that the “new covenant” is part of the “New Testament”. We cannot have the salvation offered in the “New Testament” unless we also agree to the responsibilities of the “new covenant”.

Now, we have taken a brief look at the “covenant” offered by God to all during the ‘Church Age’, which is the “new covenant”. We have also, briefly, looked at the personal form of this “covenant”, which is the basis of our personal salvation. There is also one more major “covenant” which most people get involved with during the ‘Church Age’. It is marriage between saved people. Unfortunately, too many people ignore the fact that marriage is a “covenant” agreement, which means that it is enforced by God’s court. Even most saved people concentrate on the written contract which is enforced by the court of man while ignoring the “covenant” agreement, which is enforced by God’s court.

There are people who preach doctrinal error when they take what the Bible says about remarriage and apply it to all divorced people. I will not go into the details of this subject as there are many books written on it. However, there are a couple of major facts which are ignored by many people. First, when two saved people get married, they swear an oath, which is the creation of a “covenant” agreement and that “covenant” agreement is enforced by the court of God. They also sign a contract which is enforced by the court of man. A divorce, in the court of man, does not affect the “covenant”

agreement which is enforced by the court of God. Remarriage and sex outside of marriage are ways to violate the “covenant” agreement which is enforced by the court of God. However, getting a divorce in the court of man is not, in itself, a violation the “covenant” agreement which is enforced by the court of God. Therefore, the people who take what the Bible says about a violation a “covenant” agreement, and apply it to all divorced people, are teaching doctrinal error.

Now, one preacher said that once a person has experienced sex, they cannot stay away afterwards and, therefore, all divorced people end up in sexual sin unless they take their mate back. While this may be true for most people it is not true for all people. We have the Biblical examples of **Hosea** and of Paul to prove otherwise.

Now, we also have certain guidelines for marriage which many people are ignorant of or which they ignore. And, while I can go through many of them, this book will only look at two and only at a high level.

1Corinthians 7:39 says: “The wife is bound by the law as long as her husband liveth; but if her husband be dead, she is at liberty to be married to whom she will; only in the Lord.” Now, this is obviously instructions to a widow, but the same guidelines apply to all saved. They are only to date and marry other saved people. There are many reasons why this is true, and many long-term problems for those saved people who ignore this guideline. Those things are the subject for an entire separate book. However, the reader needs to know that any saved person who ignores this guideline will suffer terribly and for a long time because they ignored this guideline.

The next guideline, for saved people, is found in **2Corinthians 6:14**, which says: “Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness?” The “yoke”, of this verse can be applied to business partners and to other things, but we are looking at the “yoke” of marriage. In our reference, the phrase “what communion hath light with darkness” tells us that saved people (“light”) cannot have the same lifestyle (“communion”) as lost people (“darkness”) have. Therefore, there will be constant conflict over everything in the marriage. In addition, the phrase “what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness” tells us that mature saved people (“righteousness”) cannot have the same enjoyments (“fellowship”) as carnal saved people (“unrighteousness”) have. Therefore, there will be constant conflict over many things in the marriage and there will be no peace.

The basic message of these two guidelines is to only seek, and agree to marry, saved people who have the same level of spiritual maturity as you have.

Now, having briefly dealt with the most important “covenant” agreements for saved people today, we must recognize that there is a whole lot more doctrine, within the Bible, that deals with “covenants”. In addition, there are famous “covenants” in the Old Testament such as the ones made with Noah, Abraham and David. There are also many people who have studied these “covenants” and provide many details and doctrines about them.

The reader who wants more details, on anything covered in this book, should use the references provided here before looking elsewhere. (Please note that I have not told the reader to believe me but have consistently pointed the reader to the Bible as their authority.) When seeking doctrine elsewhere, the Bible student should look for appropriate authors but be aware that there are many deceived people who pass on religious doctrine which is not completely correct. And there are many liars who are ministers of devils who deliberately seek to deceive. While over 90% of what those people might say or write can be true, that does not offset the hidden spiritual poison of doctrinal error. Remember the warning of **Ephesians 4:14**, which says: “That we *henceforth* be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, *and* cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive”. The beginning Bible student should be sure that they have a godly

guide in every Biblical matter, or wait until they are more spiritually mature, before they seek more doctrines from other authors.

Addendum: Thank God by Maturing

John 14:15 If ye love me, keep my commandments.

Saying thanks or bringing a one-time gift does not show true thanksgiving like a lifestyle of gratitude. When God saves us, He gives us His life and other spiritual gifts. We show our gratitude by using His gifts to increase His kingdom on this Earth. An adult can do far more than an infant can do. One of the main ways that you can thank God is to become more spiritually mature so that you can, and will do more for God's kingdom. With this in mind, the Bible has several words which describe different levels of spiritual maturity. Lost people and spiritually immature people like to claim the title of maturity but claiming a title does make it true in your life and you will not receive the blessings of that title unless you meet God's requirements for that title. With that in mind, we need to see what God actually wrote in His word.

Lost:

We all start out as lost members of the kingdom of Satan. Unless we do what the Bible says to do, we can become lost religious people, which is actually worse than just being lost.

- a. "For I say unto you, Ye shall not see me henceforth, till ye shall say, Blessed *is* he that cometh in the name of the Lord." (**Matthew 23:39, Luke 13:35**). The phrase "in the name of the Lord" means: 'in the power and authority of God'. Lots of religious liars claim this authority but none of them have it. Only Jesus Christ has this authority and He proved it by His resurrection from the dead by His own power. No other person has done that. Further, says: "*I am* he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death." (**Revelation 1:18**). No one is getting out of going to Hell and suffering eternal death in the "lake of fire" unless they come to Jesus Christ and recognize Him as their personal Lord.
- b. "For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved." (**Acts 2:21; Romans 10:13**). The phrase "call upon the name" means: 'trust in the power and authority of the name'. You are not saved by doing any religious act but by accepting an ongoing personal relationship with Jesus Christ as your personal "Lord".

Child of God:

Once you accept an ongoing personal relationship with Jesus Christ as your personal "Lord" you are a "child of God". The world says that you are a "Christian" but God does not accept the world's definitions but requires you to meet the Bible definition. As we will see, there were many saved children of God who did not meet the Bible definition to be a true Biblical "Christian".

- a. **Ephesians 1:5-6** says: "Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will, To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved." The word "predestine" means: 'to set the end point of a journey before it begins'. God "predestined" everyone to be saved and we go to Hell by rejecting His "predestination." In addition, we become God's "children" by the work of "Jesus Christ" through "adoption". This means that we are not born God's "children" and do not naturally have His character but that He must teach us how to become like Him. Further, God gets "glory" when His "grace" makes us "accepted in the beloved". But, if we don't allow His "grace" to change us we will not become "accepted in the beloved" and God gets no "glory" from saving us.
- b. **Galatians 4:1** tells us "Now I say, That the heir, as long as he is a child, differeth nothing from a servant, though he be lord of all". This verse literally tells us that we do not get all of the promises to "sons" as long as we are not the children.
- c. **Ephesians 4:11-15** tells us that God gave ministers to the church "For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ: Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the

knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ: That we henceforth be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, and cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive; But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, even Christ.” So long as you do not grow up spiritually, and become like Christ, you are still spiritual children. It does not matter how long you have been saved. What matters is your spiritual maturity. A simple measurement comes from the fact that God uses the physical to teach us about the spiritual. A teenager can reproduce physically even though they are not ready to be a parent. Someone who cannot yet reproduce is still an infant or a child. It you cannot lead someone else to salvation then you cannot reproduce spiritually and are still a spiritual child or infant.

Church Member:

- a. You must be saved and baptized before you can become a member of the church. The church is the family of God. You provide for your family and protect them in a way that you do not do for strangers. Likewise, God protects and provides for church members in ways that He does not do for others even if they are saved.
- b. The main doctrinal meaning of “baptism” is ‘identification’. In many ways it is like a marriage ceremony where two people announce to the world that they have an ongoing personal relationship with each other that they do not have with anyone else. Your baptism announces to the world that you have accepted Jesus Christ as your personal “Lord” in an ongoing personal relationship. **Mark 8:38 and Luke 9:26** say “Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed”. You cannot expect Jesus to represent you and provide for you if you are saved but refuse to be baptized and join His church.
- c. **Romans 6:3-4** says: “Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.” Baptism is a symbolic ceremony whereby we publicly declare that we will “walk in newness of life” like Christ did after His resurrection. If we are not willing to do this, we are refusing to let God have “glory” for saving us. That is a refusal to be thankful and if we refuse to be thankful for our salvation, then why should God give us anything more?
- d. **Amos 3:3** says: “Can two walk together, except they be agreed?” We cannot join God's church until we publicly agree to “walk with God.”

Son of God:

- a. In the Bible, the word “son” is used to describe a person who has received the character of their father.
- b. **John 1:12** says: “But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name”. Please notice that the “received him” is past tense while “to become” is future tense. We were saved when we “received him” but after we are saved we still must “become the sons of God”. God gave us this power when He gave us the indwelling holy “Ghost”. However, we must let Him work in our life and make us spiritually mature before we receive the character of God. After a child is born, the parents must teach the child how to become a productive member of society. They must teach the child their character. The same is true for the spiritual children of God.
- c. **Romans 8:14** says: “For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.” Saved people who are not “led by the Spirit of God” are not “the sons of God”. They might be saved, but they will not receive the blessings that are given to “the sons of God”.
- d. “Jesus”, as “the Son of God” showed us the character of God according to **John 14:7**. In the Gospels, “Jesus” showed us how to live in this flesh using the power of the holy “Ghost” since He set aside His own power as God in order to be conceived as a human being and to die as a human being. He did not take back His own power until after the devils took Him into Hell. But the point is that He is our example and we are to act like He did in the Gospels if we want to be “the sons of God”.

Carnal child of God:

- a. This is someone who is truly biblically saved but is living like a lost person. The title 'carnal Christian' is a lie from the Devil and is never accepted by God. You cannot be carnal and a Biblical "Christian" at the same time.
- b. **1Corinthians 3:1-3** says "And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, even as unto babes in Christ. I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto ye were not able to bear it, neither yet now are ye able. For ye are yet carnal: for whereas there is among you envying, and strife, and divisions, are ye not carnal, and walk as men?" Notice that carnal saved people are spiritual "babes" and they "walk as (lost) men". Notice that the evidence of their spiritual immaturity is that "there is among you envying, and strife, and divisions".
- c. **Romans 8:6-7** says "For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace. Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be." Carnal spiritual babes have no peace.
- d. **Ephesians 5:3-6 and Colossians 3:3-6** both warn us that "the wrath of God cometh on the children of disobedience". The "children of disobedience" are God's "children" who live in "disobedience", which are carnal saved people and not lost people.

Disciple:

- a. A disciple is: 'a taught child of God who has a disciplined life of learning. They pray and read their Bible daily as a minimum. They also study and meditate on God's word so that it can affect their daily walk of life.' If you do not pray daily, study your Bible daily, and feel bad if you miss even one a day then you are not a true disciple. If you are not becoming more spiritually mature on a regular basis then you are not a true disciple.
- b. Every time, in the Gospels, that Jesus said "follow me" He was calling a saved person to become a disciple and receive special spiritual training. Most had to leave their profession in order to become His disciple.
- c. The equivalent today is going to Bible School. You don't have to be called to be a preacher or a preacher's wife in order to go to Bible School. Secular college teaches you how to make a living. Bible School teaches you how to live in this world and have the best position possible in Heaven.
- d. In **Luke 10**, Jesus gave seventy disciples out as missionaries and gave them power over devils and God worked miracles through them. You have to become a true disciple before God gives you these spiritual gifts.

Christian:

- a. **Acts 11:26** says "And the disciples were called Christians first in Antioch". There were probably 20 thousand saved people in the church of Jerusalem at this time but they were not called Christians.
- b. You cannot be a true Biblical Christian unless you are first a disciple.
- c. Even after they were "disciples", Paul and Barnabas had to teach them for a year (**Acts 11:26**) before they had a life which displayed Christ to lost people.
- d. **2Corinthians 5:17** says "Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new." Unless your old life of sin and fulfilling the lusts of the flesh is dead ("passed away") and you have a new life of displaying Christ, you are not "in Christ" and are not a true Biblical "Christian".
- e. Doctrinal error claims that if you are saved then you are "in Christ" and are not a true Biblical "Christian". Biblical truth is that if you are saved then you have the "Holy Spirit" in you, which is a different member of the Trinity. **Ephesians 5** tells us that the relationship between a man and his wife is a picture of the relationship between Christ and the church. A married man can leave his wife and still be married but not enjoy the blessings of marriage. Likewise, a saved person can leave the personal relationship that is "in Christ" and still be saved but not enjoy the blessings of that relationship.

Saint:

- a. The functional definition is: 'a fully spiritually mature saved person whom God can send anywhere and they can be a leader and teacher or preacher in an existing church. If sent to where there is no church, they will start leading people to salvation and teaching them the Bible so that there is the basis for a true church when God sends a properly ordained pastor to the new work'.
- b. **Romans 1:7** and **1Corinthians 1:2** say that all the “beloved of God” are “called *to be* saints”. But, **Matthew 20:16** says: “for many be called, but few chosen”. Therefore, the true blessings go to those who are “chosen”.
- c. “Aquila and Priscilla” are one of the Biblical examples of “saints”. They were a married couple who were not preachers but they were missionaries who helped to start three churches. In order to be “chosen” as a “saint” you have to be capable of being a missionary and willing to go anywhere that God wants in order to be a missionary.
- d. In addition, **Acts 18:24-25** tells us that a world traveling famous evangelist came and taught doctrinal error. **Acts 18:26** tells us: “whom when Aquila and Priscilla had heard, they took him unto *them*, and expounded unto him the way of God more perfectly”. A true Biblical “saint” knows their Bible well enough to correct any doctrinal error and they know the right way to correct someone who believes doctrinal error.
- e. Forms of the word “saint” occur 101 times within 98 verses of the Bible. There is obviously much more taught about this title from God. They receive many spiritual blessings in this world and in eternity that less spiritually mature people do not receive. However, the main point is that in order to get this title from God you must be spiritually mature enough for God to use you as a missionary and must be willing to be a missionary to any place in the world.

For more detailed references on these Bible titles, please see the Doctrinal Study called [What is Your Level of Spiritual Maturity?](#) on ljc1611kiv.com

Pounds and Talents

Luke 19:11-28

Matthew 25:14-30

These are two parables given by Jesus. Jesus taught in parables to hide the true meaning from the lost while making the true meaning available to the saved. Therefore, we need to be careful to get the true message of these parables. Now, there are some general considerations which we should keep in mind.

- Since these references in the Bible are parables, they are 'an earthly story given to convey a spiritual meaning'. **1Corinthians 2:14** says: "But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned." Lost and carnal people get the wrong meaning by using their natural reasoning. Therefore, the saved need to seek the help of the holy Spirit in order to get the true meaning.
- Since Jesus used parables to produce two different results, we should expect that some of the teachings on parables is wrong and comes from people who claim to be religious experts but who are teaching the wrong meaning that is given to the lost and to carnal saved people. We should deliberately choose to avoid erroneous doctrine.
- Since most parables use symbolic language, we must consider what the symbols represent in order to get the true spiritual meaning of the parable. In order to get the true symbolic meaning, we must consider the context of the parables and we must consider the true "precepts" of the Bible so that the symbolic meaning which we derive matches the true "precepts" of the Bible and does not contradict them. That requires considering truths which are presented everywhere in the Bible and making sure that the spiritual message matches those general truths.
- The parable in Matthew is in chapter 25. The prior chapter tells us that Jesus was in Jerusalem teaching just before His crucifixion. Matthew 24 also has teaching on the judgment of lost people and of saved but carnal people and Jesus warned His listeners to avoid receiving those judgments. Then the start of Matthew 25 is the parable of the 10 virgins with some having oil in their lamps and some not. That parable is a warning to not be a religious lost person. And, the remainder of Matthew 25, after the parable of the talents, is the parable of the sheep and goat judgment. Therefore, this parable is in the middle of several warnings about judgment to come and this parable is also about judgment to come.
- The parable in Luke follows the account of Zacchaeus, whom many people thought was a terrible sinner who could not be saved. Yet, Jesus saved Him. We are also told that Jesus "was nigh to Jerusalem, and because they thought that the kingdom of God should immediately appear" (**Luke 19:11**). That is: Jesus knew that He was going to Jerusalem to be crucified and the people thought that God would reward their religious works which followed the "doctrines of devils" and justifies sin. God does not reward sin and disobedience but curses the people who live in sin.
- In both cases we have warnings from Jesus to religious lost people that rejecting the "word of God" to follow the religious traditions, which come from the "doctrines of devils", will bring a curse and not a reward from God.
- These two parables are parallel. That is: they deliver the messages that have the same method and they deliver similar conclusions but which differ slightly in the details. In addition, the context where these parables are reported is similar context. Further, the differences in the details of these two parables give us a fuller meaning than either parable gives by itself. Therefore, these two parables need to be studied together.

With the above acknowledged, we can look at the details of these parables in a general way.

- Both of the parables tell us about a lord traveling into a far country and giving his goods to his servants and leaving the servants to mind his business while he was gone. Both also tell of the lord returning and

judging the results produced by the servants. Both tell of the servants who produced a profit receiving rewards. Both tell of the servants who produced no profit receiving punishment.

- A “precept” from the Bible, which applies to these parables, is that God does not change (**Malachi 3:6; Hebrews 13:8**). Also, all throughout the Bible God promises to bless His people who obey while promising to curse His people who disobey. The lie from devils is that God will change when we get to Heaven. Devils have people teach the doctrinal error that God will not curse His “disobedient children” at the “judgment seat of Christ” (**Romans 14:10; 2Corinthians 5:10**). People who believe this lie prove that they prefer the “doctrines of devils” to the truth from God that is in the Bible. Your arguing to support a “doctrine of devils” does not make that doctrine true. Your arguments only reveal that you reject obedience to the Lord Jesus Christ in your heart.
- The general spiritual message is that our Lord Jesus Christ has returned to Heaven and left the saved to take care of His kingdom while He is gone. We all know that He will return and take the truly saved to Heaven. There, the saved will go through the “judgment seat of Christ”.
- The lie from devils is that this is a ‘bema seat judgment’ with no punishment but only ‘loss of rewards’. Believing that claim means that you believe that your Bible lied because **2Corinthians 5:10-11** clearly says that some saved, who are in heaven, will receive “bad” and some will receive “the terror of the Lord”. In addition, the Bible does not tell us that “God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes” until **Revelation 21:4**. This is more than 1,000 years after the “judgment seat of Christ”, which is the source of the tears. Therefore, there will be saved people in Heaven who will have tears for more than 1,000 years.
- Both of our parables warn us of this result. However, this is one of the points that the lost and carnal get the wrong meaning from the parable while the saved, who truly accept the truth from the Holy Spirit, get the different meaning.
- The two different meanings, one from the lost and one from saved and spiritual people, are why Jesus taught in parables. The meaning which you choose to accept shows if you are lost or if you are saved but carnal or if you are saved and led by the Holy Spirit.
- While many people accept certain truths in their head, they reject the same truths in their heart. What you truly believe in your heart is proven by your “works” for the kingdom of God. That is why the Bible tells us that our “works” will be judged at the “judgment seat of Christ”. Therefore, it does not matter what you say that you believe but what matters is how well your life backs your claims.
- In addition to warning us about punishment for not producing a spiritual profit for God, these parables also tell us about the people who receive a reward. However, the reward varies between the servants based upon the profit returned. This matches what **2Corinthians 5:10** tells us about the “judgment seat of Christ” when it says: “that every one may receive the things *done* in *his* body, according to that he hath done”.
- The doctrinal error from devils, which lost people and carnal people believe, is that everyone gets the same reward regardless of what they do for the “kingdom of God”. This is communism. John 14:2 does say “In my Father’s house are many mansions”, which means that some saved people will get a “mansion” as a result of the “judgment seat of Christ”. However, the lie of devils is that everyone will get a “mansion” while the only thing which is promised is “a place”. Bed space in a dorm room qualified as “a place” and matches what our parables tell us happened to the saved person who made it to heaven but brought no profit to God.
- So, in general we can see that these two parables tell us about the current condition of people in the world from a spiritual perspective. They both warn about future judgment with devils providing doctrinal error about our future judgment and God’s Holy Spirit providing the truth but only providing that truth to saved people who truly seek the truth and are willing to act on the truth.
- Finally, we see that how we accept and react to the message of these parables reveals the condition of our own heart.

Now, with the above acknowledged, we can look at the details of these parables in a specific way. First we will look at Luke 19.

- **Luke 19:13** says: “And he called his ten servants, and delivered them ten pounds, and said unto them, Occupy till I come.” Thus, they each received one “pound”.

- **Luke 19:15** says: “And it came to pass, that when he was returned, having received the kingdom, then he commanded these servants to be called unto him, to whom he had given the money, that he might know how much every man had gained by trading.”
- **Luke 19:16-19** has the report and reward of two servants.
- **Luke 19:20-26** has the report and reward of another servant.
- **Luke 19:27** says: “But those mine enemies, which would not that I should reign over them, bring hither, and slay *them* before me.” Since they died, they symbolically represent the people who go to Hell. The first three represent people who go to Heaven.
- The first three returned different levels of profit to their lord and received different rewards. Therefore, the spiritual doctrine is that saved people will receive different rewards based upon how much spiritual profit they return to God.

Next, we will look at Matthew 25.

- **Matthew 25:14-15** “For *the kingdom of heaven* is as a man travelling into a far country, *who* called his own servants, and delivered unto them his goods. And unto one he gave five talents, to another two, and to another one; to every man according to his several ability; and straightway took his journey.”
 - Here we see only three servants while the parable in Luke has 10 servants.
 - Here we see that they received different amounts while the parable in Luke has every servant receiving the same amount.
- **Matthew 25:16-17** tell us that the two servants, who received the greatest amounts, doubled what they received. Therefore, they returned a profit equal to what they initially received.
- **Matthew 25:18** says: “But he that had received one went and digged in the earth, and hid his lord's money.”
 - This is symbolic of someone using their spiritual gifts to enjoy the sins of the flesh. Elvis Presley is an example of this type of saved, but carnal, person.
- **Matthew 25:20-23** has the report and rewards of the two servants who returned a profit to their lord.
 - Notice that they received variable rewards based upon the amount of profit they generated. This is the same as the parable in **Luke 19**.
 - Also like the parable in **Luke 19**, we have three people representing saved people who go to Heaven.
 - In both parables, two servants were called “good” and received rewards.
 - In both parables, one servant was called “*Thou* wicked and slothful servant” and lost everything that he had and received punishment. Thus, the servant who returned no profit represents saved people who are eternal paupers. They do not receive a “mansion” but only “a place”, which can be just bed space in a dorm room.
- In both parables Jesus gives the reason for the judgment as: “For unto every one that hath shall be given, and he shall have abundance: but from him that hath not shall be taken away even that which he hath.”
- In this parable, Jesus adds: “And cast ye the unprofitable servant into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.”
 - Now, the lost and carnal people tell you that He went to Hell. But that is not what these parables teach. All three servants represent people who go to Heaven.
 - However, the unprofitable servant is “cast... into outer darkness”. The word “outer” does not mean “outside” but means: ‘more to the outside of the same group or place’.
 - If this servant was sent to Hell then we would be told that he was killed like seven servants were killed in the parable of Luke. Also, Jesus would have used the phrase “outside darkness”, to represent the “lake of fire” instead of using the phrase “outer darkness”.
 - Also, since the rich man saw Lazarus from Hell, Hell is not “darkness” like the “lake of fire” is.
 - When we see the references in **Revelation**, we realize that those who are closest to Jesus, in Heaven, will have the most light. However, those saved people who are far from Jesus, in Heaven, will be in relative darkness because as light gets further from the source it has more area to cover and, therefore, is more dispersed.
 - The saved people who are far Jesus, in Heaven, are in relative darkness and that place has “weeping and gnashing of teeth” because of the punishment received at the “judgment seat of Christ”.

- Now, God does “wipe away all tears from their eyes” (**Revelation 21:4**), but not until after the “great white throne” judgment (**Revelation 20:11-14**), which is more than 1,000 years later.
- The last two verses in **Isaiah** let us know that these saved people will have the cause of their tears an average of almost twice a week until God does “wipe away all tears from their eyes”.

The warning of these two parables is to not go to Heaven with no spiritual profit for God. Satan hates all saved people. He cannot get you to be lost but he can get you to lose your everlasting rewards and to suffer tears for almost 1,000 years. He does this by having his ministers teach lies and “doctrines of devils”.

- The first lie is that we are going to a Communistic Heaven where everyone gets a mansion regardless of what they do to bring God a spiritual profit. The message of these two parables proves that to be a lie with variable rewards based upon the level of profit returned to God and with the saved person who returned no profit being an eternal pauper.
- The second lie is that there are “no tears in Heaven” as soon as we get there. The truth is that this does not happen until more than 1,000 years after we get there.

Revelation 21:23 And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb *is* the light thereof.

Revelation 22:5 And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign forever and ever.

Prophecies for Today

Luke 21:8-19: And he said, Take heed that ye be not deceived: for many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and the time draweth near: go ye not therefore after them. But when ye shall hear of wars and commotions, be not terrified: for these things must first come to pass; but the end is not by and by. Then said he unto them, Nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: And great earthquakes shall be in divers places, and famines, and pestilences; and fearful sights and great signs shall there be from heaven. But before all these, they shall lay their hands on you, and persecute you, delivering you up to the synagogues, and into prisons, being brought before kings and rulers for my name's sake. And it shall turn to you for a testimony. Settle it therefore in your hearts, not to meditate before what ye shall answer: For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist. And ye shall be betrayed both by parents, and brethren, and kinsfolks, and friends; and some of you shall they cause to be put to death. And ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake. But there shall not an hair of your head perish. In your patience possess ye your souls.

[Matthew 10:17-23](#); [Matthew 24:1-25:30](#); [Mark 13](#) and [Luke 21:8-36](#) are dealing with prophecies of future events.

[Luke 21:8-19](#); [Matthew 10:17-22](#); [Matthew 24:4-13](#) and [Mark 13:5-13](#) have prophecies of events before the Rapture.

[Luke 21:20-28](#); [Matthew 24:15-31](#) and [Mark 13:14-27](#) have prophecies of events that will happen to Jews during the great tribulation.

[Luke 21:29-38](#); [Matthew 24:32-44](#) and [Mark 13:26-37](#) give the '*Parable of the Fig Tree*', which applies to everyone, and is followed by the command to watch, which is like a soldier in a war zone is to watch for enemies while the other soldiers are busy.

Most people want to know about unfulfilled prophecies of future events. They are a lot less interested in fulfilled prophecies, which are actually the most important prophecies. The fulfilled prophecies assure us that we can rely on God no matter what happens. They prove that He is wiser and more powerful than all other beings combined. For example, hundreds of years before Jesus was born, God promised king David that Christ would be his physical descendant. Then years later, but still hundreds of years before the birth of Jesus, the prophet said that the Christ would be born in Bethlehem. So, the devils tried to kill all of the descendants of King David, but failed. Then they made sure that all of the descendants of King David not only left Bethlehem, but left the entire area. But, when the time came, Jesus was born in Bethlehem and both Mary and Joseph were physical and legal descendants of King David.

In addition to those two, there are so many prophecies fulfilled that it is impossible for them to be coincident. No, God says what he will do and dares all of His enemies to try and stop Him and then proves that He is wiser and more powerful than all other beings combined by fulfilling prophecy every time.

Now, there are two main reasons why people want to know about unfulfilled prophecies, especially prophecies about the time called the "great tribulation". The first reason is pride. They want people to think that they have some hidden knowledge. However, **James 4:6** tells us: "God resisteth the proud, but giveth grace unto the humble." Therefore, people who seek to know about prophecies so that they can be proud have God resisting them. That is why we have so many conflicting claims about Bible prophecies. Proudful men claim to be experts and argue with other proudful men, who also claim to be experts, and both are arguing for their form of doctrinal error. The wise person avoids those traps of sin and pride.

The other reason that people want to know about unfulfilled prophecies is because they are lost, or they have lost friends, and the lost people want to know so that they can avoid God fulfilling these prophecies in their life. That was why the Left Behind books and movies were so popular. However, if millions of devils have not done this once in thousands of years, then no person will avoid God's prophecy. Further, **2Thessalonians 2:11** says: "And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie:" Anyone who has the opportunity to hear the Gospel, and refuses to accept God's salvation before the Rapture, will believe a lie and die lost. They will go to Hell. Their only hope is to get saved today.

Now, with all of that said, there is unfulfilled prophecy that can still be applied to God's people of today. Our reference is prophecy which was mainly fulfilled in the time of the Book of Acts, but God has allowed additional fulfillment of these prophecies and will continue to do so until the Rapture. Read books like Pilgrim's Progress, The Trail of Blood, and the true-life accounts of martyrs. Therefore, since these might become true in our personal life or in the life of someone we know, we should know and understand these prophecies. Now, there are some basics about understanding prophecies which a lot of people don't know.

1. We have lots of differing opinions about unfulfilled prophecies because most people use wrong methods in order to try and understand prophecy.
2. Prophecy has a spiritual cause and a physical result. There are two way of looking at prophecy: from a physical view and from a spiritual view. Most people take the physical and want to understand what will happen in this world. However, God is a Spirit and God gives prophecy for spiritual reasons. If we do not understand what God is trying to accomplish spiritually, we will be surprised when God does the unexpected. Therefore, all prophecy must first be understood from the spiritual perspective.
3. Almost all, if not all, prophecy uses symbolic language. The symbolic meaning of things changes with the context. For example, many places in the Bible use the word "water" for the basic liquid of life. In addition, there are places where "water" is used for spiritual cleansing. However, in **John 3** it is used for physical birth as a mother's water must break before physical birth. Therefore, all symbolism, and especially the symbolism of prophecy, must be understood within the context where it is found.

Now, we could continue with more rules but we need to get into our reference. And, we need to look for the spiritual message from God which is given in symbolic language which must be understood within the context. So, we will start with the context.

In Luke 20, we read about "**The Religious Leaders Challenge Jesus**". That is the theme of the entire chapter. They sent several groups to try and trap Jesus with arguments from their religious traditions. In every case, Jesus gave them an answer which literally shut their mouths and they could say nothing more after He answered them. Then, at the end of the chapter, Jesus challenged them with a doctrinal question which they could not answer. In the entire chapter the religious leaders were arguing from the perspective that religion is something that we do in this physical world. Every answer from Jesus was based on the spiritual perspective of what God wanted to accomplish when God gave His word. Therefore, a main lesson leading into our chapter is that the physical perspective cannot compete with understanding what God is trying to accomplish spiritually.

Next, at the start of our chapter we have two incidences which most people misunderstand because they don't understand the theme of the entire chapter and they do not look at the things in this chapter from the view of what God is trying to accomplish spiritually.

Hebrews 11 is summarized with: "And these all, having obtained a good report through faith, received not the promise: God having provided some better thing for us, that they without us should not be made perfect". The people in Hebrews 11 could only have earned their testimony by putting the spiritual perspective above the physical perspective. God let them suffer so that they could all, having obtained a good report and the associated everlasting spiritual rewards.

Understand that God is always righteous. God does not arbitrarily give rewards and punishments. He puts people through tests and records their responses. He then gives rewards or punishment based upon the responses. If someone accuses God of being arbitrary, he can produce the recordings to prove that He judged according to the proven attitudes and actions of people. In the parallel reference of **Mark 13:7**, we read: "for *such things* must needs be". This means that the test is not optional. God cannot collect His legal evidence without the test. So, people are looking at the physical test and complaining because they don't like what is happening. If they don't understand the spiritual perspective then they cannot understand what the prophecy is truly about.

Think about an infant taken to the doctor. They don't understand what is happening. They don't like this stranger looking at them and touching them so they throw a fit even though they are not hurt. They demand that mommy make things go the way that they want even though they don't know the consequences of their demands. The

same is true for lost people and carnal saved people who cry and complain about God's tests when they have no idea of the consequences of God's test and especially since they have no clue about the everlasting spiritual consequences.

Now, with that said, let's return to our reference.

We started with the statement that [Luke 21:20-28](#); [Matthew 24:15-31](#) and [Mark 13:14-27](#) have prophecies of events that will happen to Jews during the "great tribulation". None of the people listening to me are Jews. In addition, there are liars preaching doctrines of devils about the "great tribulation". I am not going into that because too many people are willing to go to Hell instead of hearing the truth. So, without giving the evidence, at this time, I will tell you that if you are saved then you will be in heaven and what happens on Earth does not apply to you. If you are lost and have the opportunity to hear the Gospel but refuse to get saved, then God does not owe you another opportunity to get saved. All such people, who are 'left behind' will receive a "strong delusion", according to **2Thessalonians 2:11**.

Next, what does apply to us for today is the prophecy of [Luke 21:8-19](#); [Matthew 10:17-22](#); [Matthew 24:4-13](#) and [Mark 13:5-13](#). People say that the next prophecy to be fulfilled is the Rapture. However, these prophecies were first fulfilled during the time recorded in the book of Acts. However, they have secondary fulfillments ongoing until the Rapture.

The start of these prophecies for today is actually in **Luke 21:7** where the disciples asked Jesus: "Master, but when shall these things be? and what sign *will there be* when these things shall come to pass?" That is the main question that almost everyone asks about unfulfilled prophecy. Now consider that Jesus started His answer by saying Who not listen to. As we often see in the Bible, people ask God one question, which is the wrong question to ask, and God answers the question that they should have asked. Therefore, our first lesson from this particular section of prophecy is that most people ask the wrong question. If we want to truly understand prophecy, we need to understand it God's way and God tells us to start by listening to the correct authority and avoid the wrong authority.

Now, in our chapter before this prophecy we have two events reported which are usually misunderstood because people look at them from a physical perspective instead of from the spiritual perspective, which the context tell us is the right perspective. Remember that the prior chapter had the religious leaders challenging Jesus over doctrine and he proved them wrong, and shut their mouths, by using the spiritual perspective when they used the physical perspective. Then the most of the rest of this chapter is dealing with prophecy, which will result in doctrinal error when people try to understand it from a physical perspective instead of the spiritual perspective. The end of our chapter is a precept and a proverb which leads to a command which all must be understood from the spiritual perspective if we are to avoid doctrinal error. Thus, everything in two chapters is teaching us that the physical perspective leads to doctrinal error while the spiritual perspective leads to truth and blessings from God.

It was already mentioned that prophecy has a spiritual cause and a physical result. God has a spiritual reason for everything done according to prophecy. If we don't understand God's spiritual reason, we will not be able to understand why certain things will happen. Likewise, Satan has a spiritual reason for leading us into doctrinal error. Therefore, he has his ministers appear to be ministers of God while they tell us lies and they especially like to do so with prophecy. That is why Jesus said that the first thing that we need to look at is who is giving us the interpretation of prophecy. **1John 4:1** says: "Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world." This matches with what Jesus said in our current reference. Jesus goes on to say that we will go through times of trouble. The lying ministers of Satan say that you can get all of the blessings of God and eternal rewards even while living a life of sin. They are liars. Jesus tells us that the first thing that we need to understand about prophecy is who is explaining it to us and we are to avoid "false christs". In addition, Jesus says that "many shall come in my name" (**Luke 21:8**). And Jesus says that we will be deceived if we "go after them". On my web site is a Study called [False things According to the Bible](#) and it gives several Bible references for where the Bible tells us how to identify false things. In addition to that, our current context tells us that we will go through problems and that "the end *is* not by and by" (**Luke 21:9**). Therefore, anyone who tells you that the things which are happening show that the Rapture or the "great tribulation" is

imminent is telling you a lie. They may or may not be deceived but Jesus told you to not follow them and to not listen to them or you will be deceived.

Next, in [Luke 21:10](#), [Matthew 24:6](#) and [Mark 13:7](#), we read that what is currently happening “*must first come to pass*”. That means that these things are not optional. Everyone, including the saved, will go through these things. Now, from a physical perspective, people want to avoid these things. They will want to listen to liars who claim that they can avoid these things one way or another. Therefore, anyone who says that the saved can avoid them is a liar.

With that in mind, we need to understand God’s spiritual reason if we want to truly understand what God is doing and why He is doing it. Simply put, this is a spiritual test that God puts everyone through and God records their reaction. Everyone will react in one of three ways:

1. They will react like a lost person and condemn God for what he is doing.
2. They will react like a spiritual baby and cry and complain.
3. They will react in faith and thank God for the change to prove their faith in God and tell others how God protects and provides for them even in the worst of situations.

You can argue all you want but God will put your over-all attitude and actions into one of these three categories and keep the record for when you are personally judged by God.

Now, before you complain about what you are going through, read [Pilgrim’s Progress](#) or [The Trail of Blood](#), or [Hebrews 11](#) or the accounts of martyrs. Do a non-personal comparison of your personal experience to the recorded experiences of others and honestly ask who should have greater reward from God based on how much each suffered for God and the Gospel.

Next, realize that our current sentence says: “the end *is* not by and by”. Matthew and Mark both report: “but the end shall not be yet”. Thus, all three Gospel accounts tell us that this is not the time for the Rapture. We need to expect several more tests in our life-time. Therefore, we need to get spiritually mature enough so that we pass these types of tests with true faith in God.

Our next sentence, in all three Gospel accounts, tells us several things which the liars will claim is a sign of the end. However, both Matthew and Mark report that Jesus said: “these *are* the beginnings of sorrows”. They are just the start of tests which we will go through.

The next sentence, in all three Gospel accounts, tell us that the truly saved will be persecuted, falsely accused, jailed, killed, and many other things which we think are bad from a physical perspective. However, again, we need to look at this from God’s spiritual perspective and see what God is trying to accomplish. [Luke 21:13](#) tells us: “it shall turn to you for a testimony”. Our reaction to these things is what God will use, when He judges us, to justify giving us everlasting rewards in Heaven. Again, God is righteous and does not do things arbitrarily. We must have evidence which is accepted in God’s court if we want to receive everlasting rewards in Heaven. [Hebrews 11:35](#) says: “Women received their dead raised to life again: and others were tortured, not accepting deliverance; that they might obtain a better resurrection:” and this summarizes the message of [Hebrews 11](#). The people who suffered more for God, in this life, “obtained a better resurrection”. Therefore, the truly spiritually mature saved person looks forward to a time of testing so that they can increase their personal faith in God and can increase their expected reward in their own resurrection.

[Mark 13:9](#) tells us that God also uses this time of testing “for a testimony against them”. God will not use their abuse of the devil’s children when He judges people because the devil’s children are not promised His protection. However, God’s children are promised the protection of God and people who mistreat God’s children will suffer for doing so. However, once more, we see that God is always righteous and must have recorded evidence when He judges these people. Therefore, God lets these people abuse and kill His children so that H has recorded evidence when He judges them. That is what is meant by the phrase: “for a testimony against them”. And, we already saw that the children of God who agree to let God use them this way receive greater everlasting rewards.

Therefore, God is not being unfair to His children while God uses His children to get evidence against the people that God will condemn.

Next, our reference in Luke says: “Settle *it* therefore in your hearts, not to meditate before what ye shall answer: For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist.” This, basically, commands us to not worry about what will happen in the future. The fact is that worry is the opposite of faith. If we are willing to let God use us however He wants, and accept that he will let things happen to us in the flesh that the world thinks is bad, then God will help us through the problems when we need His help. Basically, this is a command to not worry about what will happen and to have faith that God will help.

Next, our reference tells us: “And ye shall be betrayed both by parents, and brethren, and kinsfolks, and friends; and some of you shall they cause to be put to death. And ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake.” Matthew and Mark tell us similar things with different details. Basically, we cannot rely upon any human relationship but must rely completely upon God when we are in these trials.

With that said, the last thing that our prophecy tells us is: “But there shall not an hair of your head perish. In your patience possess ye your souls.” Matthew reports something similar when he says: “But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved”. Meanwhile, Mark reports: “but he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved”. Now, reading these things it is easy to misunderstand what is promised.

Philippians 1:19 says: “For I know that this shall turn to my salvation through your prayer, and the supply of the Spirit of Jesus Christ”. Also, **2Thessalonians 2:13** says: “But we are bound to give thanks alway to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth”. In both of these references we see salvation being given to someone who is already saved. No, we cannot lose our salvation. But, true salvation is ‘God’s life in you’. Therefore, God’s life can be increased in us, which is what these references are referring to.

Now, with that understanding, we can return to our prophecy. I can testify from several personal experiences that God will lead His people into physically dangerous situations to testify for Him. And, if people keep their faith in God throughout the experience, then God protects them even when people threaten to kill God’s child. However, the person who gets scared encourages the child of the devil to hurt them. And, those who go through these experiences increase their faith in God which is an increase of God’s life in them.

However, there has been martyrs who were not physically saved. They received an increase of God’s life in eternity, which means they received a greater everlasting reward. So, like the three Hebrew children in the book of **Daniel**, God will save His children regardless if they live or die physically.

Questions and Answers

1. Put your name on every page of the test and use the back of the test for more room to answer questions. Do **NOT** write too small because the teacher has old eyes that don't work as well as young eyes.
2. What is the purpose of Studying the Bible?
 - a. To get the knowledge, understanding and wisdom of God into our mind and life so that we can use them to get God's blessings.
3. What is the difference between the purpose of an education from a secular college and Bible School?
 - a. A secular education is designed to teach you how to make a living. Bible School teaches you how to spiritually mature your soul and how to have a productive life.
4. Where does the Bible tell us: "Study to shew thyself approved unto God"?
 - a. **2 Timothy 2:15.**
5. What is the practical tool that you are to have for each subject that you study?
 - a. A separate note book for each subject.
6. What is the characteristic from God which should be the main process for any type of study?
 - a. Order
7. How do you go about studying a subject with a lot of information?
 - a. Break it in to manageable pieces and keep breaking each piece into smaller pieces until each piece is small enough to "eat and digest". Deal with large amounts of information like you would eat a caribou.
8. What are the main danger of books and web pages when it comes to studying a subject especially when studying something like the Bible?
 - a. There are a lot of error and lies published.
9. What two purposes were given for taking notes in class?
 - a. The process of writing down the notes help you to understand and retain the material presented.
 - b. At a later time, notes can help you recall the information or find where it is covered in detail.
10. What is the difference between "bible" and "the word of God"?
 - a. There are many man-written books which are perversions of the "word of God" which are called "bibles". They all have copyrights in them to show that they belong to groups of men. The English 1611-KJV has no copyright because it belongs to God.
11. How do we know that God wrote the "word of God"?
 - a. All the way through it we read "thy word" when the word "thy" refers to God. We read where holy men of God told us "thus says the Lord" when "Lord" refers to God.
 - b. We have hundreds of fulfilled prophecies.
 - c. **2 Peter 1:21** tells us: "For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake *as they were* moved by the holy Ghost." This means that God used holy men" to write His word like we use a pen to write our own words.
12. Why is it important that we know that God wrote the "word of God"?
 - a. Because it is what God will use to judge everyone.
13. Why is it important that we know that God preserved the "word of God"?
 - a. Because it tells us how to live and God would be a liar to tell us to live one way and then use another way to judge us.
14. What parts of the "word of God" are we told are preserved?
 - a. All of it.
 - b. Every word.
 - c. Every "jot and tittle", which is the punctuation.
15. Sometimes we see the same message said in two different places of the Bible but different words are used. How does this fit the doctrine of preservation?
 - a. The important thing is the message. The same message said two different ways is not a conflict but a help in understanding.

16. What is the main purpose of the “word of God” in our life today?
 - a. It is the basis for our faith and action in life.
17. What language has God preserved His word in today?
 - a. English
18. What purpose do Bibles in other languages have?
 - a. To help us understand.
19. Why do the Gospels tell the same incidents in different sequences?
 - a. The Gospels were not written in time sequence but each writer gives us a different picture of Jesus Christ. They have several points, within their Gospel to prove the picture which they are giving us and they tell of incidents which support each point. Within the telling of a given point the Gospel writers usually kept a time sequence but none of the Gospels are in a strict time sequence. Therefore, there is no conflict even though the order in which incidents are presented differ between the Gospels.
20. What is the difference between interpretation and application?
 - a. There is only one interpretation but many applications.
21. Which of these is the definition of a Bible word?
 - a. The interpretation.
22. How do we find the true definition of a Bible word?
 - a. Find every place where the word is used in the Bible.
 - b. See how it is used within the context where it is used.
 - c. See what is similar between every usage. What is the same is the definition or single interpretation of the word. What varies in the many applications of the word?
23. Where in the Bible is God’s main procedure for studying the Bible?
 - a. Isaiah 28
24. What is a precept?
 - a. A law that never changes regardless of circumstances.
25. Why do people argue about the doctrine that is found in Genesis?
 - a. They are God deniers. Even those who claim to believe in one or more God reject the power of God that is required to do what Genesis says He did and in the way that it says. They deny God’s power because they want to challenge God’s authority over themselves.
26. What does the phrase “He that hath ears to hear, let him hear” mean?
 - a. If you can hear and understand spiritual truth then understand what is being said from a spiritual perspective.
27. What are the theories of ‘Big Bang’ and ‘Evolution’?
 - a. They are precepts of a lying religion which is called humanism. It lies when it claims that the religious precepts are scientific facts.
28. What are three simple evidences that ‘Evolution’ never happened and never will happen?
 - a. It is still a ‘theory’, which means that it has not fulfilled the requirements of the Scientific Method in order to prove that it is a scientific law. If people understand the requirements of the Scientific Method then they will also understand that it never will because the most basic requirement is “reproducibility” and ‘Evolution’ cannot be reproduced in 100 lifetimes.
 - b. Reproduction across kinds is impossible. You cannot get a snake and a bird to mate and produce a dragon. You cannot get any two different kinds of animals, like a mammal and a fish, to mate and reproduce. ‘Evolution’ requires this impossibility.
 - c. ‘Spontaneous Life’ is impossible. You can put inert (non-living rocks) materials of any kind in a sealed environment, which has no life in it and does not allow any living thing to enter, and apply as many types of force as you want for as long as you want and it will not produce life. ‘Evolution’ requires this impossibility.
29. What is available on computer devices, like smart phones, which are an example of the doctrine from **2Corinthians 4:18**?
 - a. Multi-player virtual reality games. This physical is God’s virtual reality while the spiritual reality is the true reality.

30. What are the three parts of man which were made in God's image and how did each die due to sin and how will Jesus Christ save each part?
 - a. We have a spirit which is the true us. It died when Adam and Eve were separated from the presence of God. Our spirit is instantly saved and put into "heavenly places" as soon as we accept Jesus Christ as our personal Lord.
 - b. We have a body which was immediately corrupted, when Adam and Eve sinned, with the process called 'aging'. It did not finish, for Adam, until almost 1,000 years later but the fact that it started and is passed to all people shows that Adam and Eve died (started the process) physically when they sinned. Our bodies are so corrupt that God will not use any part of them but will give us a totally new body in Heaven. That is the salvation of our bodies.
 - c. We each have a soul, which is the long-term way that we think, the way that we react emotionally and the way that we make decisions of our will. Children and even babies demonstrate the corruption of these things and the Bible tells the saved to let our personal relationship with Jesus Christ change these things. Thus, the salvation of our soul is an ongoing process that starts when we accept Jesus Christ as our personal Lord and ends when we die or are raptured.
31. What is the evidence that someone is to display which shows that someone truly speaks for God?
 - a. The power of God in their life, their ministry and / or their interpretation of God's word.
32. What is the evidence which people claim is evidence that they speak for God, but which claim is wrong?
 - a. Credentials from men such as religious training or a religious position or recognition from other religious people.
33. What are two main evidences that someone is preaching doctrinal error and that we should not listen to any of their doctrine so that we avoid being spiritually poisoned?
 - a. They use some man-written 'bible' instead of the pure "word of God" (KJV1611).
 - b. They correct God's word by adding to it or by taking something from it out of context in order to support their doctrine.
34. What is the main attitude we are to have when we read the Bible or listen to anything which comes from the Bible?
 - a. The Bible is always right even when I don't understand and / or don't like what it literally says.
35. What are people truly saying when they are told a Bible truth and respond with 'I don't believe that'?
 - a. They are admitting that they refuse to "live by faith". When we understand something, and agree with it, we say 'I see'. **Hebrews 11:1** says: "Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen." If we must 'understand and agree with something' before we believe it, then we are rejecting the Bible requirement of faith.
36. **2Timothy 2:15** says: "Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth." "Dividing" is the mathematical function whereby we separate according to precise rules and get a precise result. What is the main Biblical rule for separating laws that all must obey from commandments that God gives to us personally to obey?
 - a. Anything that is said literally in at least two places of the Bible is a law for everyone to believe and obey. Anything else is used by God to instruct us in our personal relationship with Him.
37. What is the purpose of the word "Amen" in the Bible?
 - a. It doubles what preceded it and makes that preceding statement a law for all to obey.
38. Why did God put His word in writing?
 - a. So that we could verify what people claim comes from God. Religious men tell us to obey them on the basis that their god told them what to command you to do but they have no verification to their claim unless they can show it in the written word of God.
39. How do we find the true definition of Bible words?
 - a. We look at every place that they are used and what is the same in every place is the basic Bible definition of the word.
40. What does the difference in where we find a Bible word give to us?
 - a. The many applications
41. What is the main problem of using a man-written dictionary for Bible words?
 - a. That often leads to doctrinal error

42. What is the main requirement for prayer as related to the Bible?
 - a. We must pray every time that we read or study the Bible so that God's Holy Spirit will show us the spiritual truth. Otherwise, we are in danger of using our "natural reasoning", which leads to doctrinal error.
43. What is the Biblical definition of the "Old Testament"?
 - a. The religious part of the Mosaic Law
44. What is the definition of a parable?
 - a. An earthly story with a spiritual meaning
45. What is the main thing to remember when trying to understand a parable?
 - a. It usually uses symbolic language which can only be properly understood by considering the context where the parable is found in the word of God.
46. The Gospels have several places where they say that Jesus did many miracles, without specifying the exact miracle. Then, there are several places where the Gospels tell us about specific miracles and give us details. What is the main purpose of telling us about the specific miracles?
 - a. They are a visual lesson to illustrate or prove the doctrine presented in context of the miracle.
47. The Bible tells us that there are saved and lost in eternity but there are hot / cold / lukewarm (or godly / ungodly / unjust) people in this life. What is the relationship of these three types of people to salvation?
 - a. The hot / godly are saved and live a life which displays the godly changes due to true Biblical salvation.
 - b. The cold / ungodly are lost and live a life which shows that they are lost.
 - c. The lukewarm / unjust claim to be saved but live like they are lost. Only God can know if they are truly saved or lost and that will only be revealed after their death.
48. How are these three types of people related to the "Parable of the Sower" and the four types of ground / hearts?
 - a. The "good ground" represents the hot / godly people.
 - b. The "way side" represents the cold / ungodly people.
 - c. The "stony ground" and the "ground among thorns" represent the lukewarm / unjust people.
49. How do we answer the claim that there are conflicts between the Gospels because incidents are presented at different times within the Gospels?
 - a. No Gospel is written in a strict time sequence but all Gospels are written to give us a unique picture of Jesus Christ. The incidents are presented in each Gospel when that incident supports the point being made by the particular Gospel writer.
50. What is the main requirement for receiving most promises made by God for the 'Church Age'?
 - a. Do what the Bible says is required to receive the particular promise.
51. What is the main purpose of prophecy in the Bible?
 - a. The fulfilled prophecies prove that the God of the Bible is the most powerful being in existence and all devils and all men working together cannot keep God from fulfilling His prophecies and His promises.
52. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Trinity, and what is the main application for the saved?
 - a. We have three pictures of God and each is a full being. This makes God far more than any other being and so high up that we cannot challenge Him in any way. Religion denies the Trinity so that they can reduce God to the level of man and try to claim that man can have more authority than God has.
53. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Father, and what is the main application for the saved?
 - a. He gives us the character which we are to all try to become. God the Father is the most powerful and wise Being who exists and also the most of any other valued attribute of beings. He also has other, less important, titles which give us different definitions of His character.
54. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Son, and what is the main application for the saved?
 - a. God the Son became man, paid the debt for our sin and represents us before God the Father because He experienced being a weak human while God the Father did not. Many other titles belong to God the Son and they each have a different doctrinal meaning and a different application to us but they are all still part of the same person in the Trinity

55. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Holy Spirit, and what is the main application for the saved?
- God the Holy Spirit indwells the saved and keeps us connected to God regardless of what we do. His title of Holy Spirit is used when he is dealing with us on spiritual matters. His title of Holy Ghost is used when He is dealing with the saved in this physical reality. He also has other names, Like Comforter, which tells us more about His character.
56. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Lord, and what is the main application for the saved?
- Lord always has to do with government, laws and judgment. No other title deal with these areas within the Bible. God the Father is called Lord, God the Son is called Lord, and men are called lord. The Bible always uses a lower-case lord for men, an upper-case Lord for God and the all capitals, LORD, is used for a particular characteristic of God the Father, although some claim that some of those references are to God the Son in the Old Testament. Lord is "no respecters of persons", which means that all judgments and legal matters are handled the same regardless of who they are applied to. This role of God never deals with us in a personal way. God deals with everyone through His role as Lord.
57. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Jesus, and what is the main application for the saved?
- Jesus is the name of a literal physical man and "God in human flesh" is one of three men in the Bible with this name. Jesus shows us how to live in this body using the power of the Holy Ghost.
58. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Christ, and what is the main application for the saved?
- The Old Testament title of the same is Messiah / Messias. The relationship between Christ and the church is pictured by the relationship between a man and his wife, which is one reason why the Bible is so against divorce. Christ deals with each saved person personally and shows them how to mature spiritually after their initial profession. Christ never deals with lost people.
59. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Lord Jesus, and what is the main application for the saved?
- The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name. The Bible does not use this title for the Son of God until after the resurrection when He took back His power and authority as God. This title is used to let us know that the command which He gives to us personally, as Jesus, are things which we will be judged for when we face Him as our Lord.
60. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Lord Christ, and what is the main application for the saved?
- The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name. This title is used to let us know that we will face judgment for how well we personally obeyed the commandments from Christ which are to cause us to mature spiritually while in this life.
61. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Jesus Christ, and what is the main application for the saved?
- The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name. This title tells us things which are available to all saved as soon as they make a profession but which require spiritual maturing in order to receive them.
62. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Christ Jesus, and what is the main application for the saved?
- The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name. This title tells us things which are available to all saved but only after they accept the require spiritual maturing. With Christ being first, the emphasis is on the function of that role.
63. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Lord Jesus Christ, and what is the main application for the saved?
- The doctrine of this name combines the doctrines of each single name. Basically, this title is used to tell us that we are to obey the personal commands which come from Jesus or Christ and that we will be judged for our level of personal obedience to these personal commandments.
64. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Son, and what is the main application for the saved?
- A son has the character of the father. God the Son displays the character of God the Father. John 1:12 says that after we are saved ("received him"), we are given the power, and expected to use it "to become the sons of God". This means to have our character changed to show the character of God the Father.
65. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Son of Man, and what is the main application for the saved?
- This title is used for the Son of God to emphasize His humanity and how He is like any other human man. This title is used differently from "Jesus" because "Jesus" is used to be an example to

- the believer on how to live in this flesh while “Son of man” is used strictly to emphasize His humanity without emphasizing Him as an example.
66. How did Jesus deal with devils in the Gospels?
 - a. Every time He found them possessing a person He freed the person from their possession.
 67. What is the Biblical difference between the word “devil” and the word ‘daemon’?
 - a. There are no ‘daemons’ in the Bible. Devils inserted this doctrinal error so that people would think that the evil spiritual beings were ‘daemon’ and so that they would ignore or downplay the Biblical warnings against devils.
 68. How did Jesus deal with devils who identified Him and why?
 - a. Every time that the devils identified Jesus, He told them to shut up. Their identifying Him gave support to the religious leaders claiming that He used the power of Satan, and not the power of God. This make devils stop possessing people.
 69. What did Jesus say was the “greatest Commandment” and why is it not part of the “Ten Commandments”?
 - a. Jesus say was the “greatest Commandment” was “Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy strength, and with all thy mind; and thy neighbour as thyself”. It is not part of the “Ten Commandments” but is actually a summary of all of the “Ten Commandments”.
 70. Which of the “Ten Commandments” is not applicable today and why?
 - a. “Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy”. It is the only part of the “Ten Commandments” which deals with the religious law of the Mosaic Law and that is what was replaced by the New Testament. Sunday is not a sabbath but is a day to celebrate the resurrection of our Lord.
 71. What is the definition given of a covenant?
 - a. ‘a contract that is made by swearing an oath which is recognized by the court of God and the covenant is enforced by God’.
 72. What are the two main covenants which saved people are to be involved in during the ‘Church Age’?
 - a. salvation
 - b. (Sometimes) marriage
 73. Where does the Bible give us the doctrine of the “New Covenant” / “New Testament”?
 - a. Hebrews 9
 74. Where does the Bible give us the doctrine of the “Old Covenant” / “Old Testament”?
 - a. Hebrews 8
 75. What is the covenant of marriage and why does it have special importance to God?
 - a. The marriage vows are the covenant that is sworn before God and are enforced by the court of God.
 76. What is the relationship between virginity and the marriage covenant?
 - a. All covenant are supposed to be sealed by blood like Hebrews explains that the “Old Covenant” and the “New Covenant”. The virgin wife is supposed to spill the blood to spiritually seal the marriage covenant.
 77. What is the Biblical interpretation of the name of “Jesus”?
 - a. A literal physical man.
 78. Where do we find the name of “Jesus” most often?
 - a. Gospels
 79. What is the main doctrine that we learn from the name of “Jesus”?
 - a. How to live in this flesh using the power of the Holy Ghost.
 80. Where do we find the role of “Christ” most often?
 - a. In the Epistles.
 81. What is the main doctrine that is taught with the role of “Christ”?
 - a. How to mature spiritually after se are saved.
 82. What is the main doctrine of the role ‘son’?
 - a. A son receives the character of the father.
 83. Why does God adopt us and give us the “power to become a son of God” (**John 1:12**)?
 - a. So that He can give us His character and make us like Him.
 84. What is the main doctrine that is associated with the role of “Son of God”?

- a. Jesus shows us the character of God the Father.
- 85. What is the main doctrine that is associated with the role of "Son of man"?
 - a. Jesus was / is a literal physical man.
- 86. What is the example of the role of "Saviour"?
 - a. Parent
- 87. What is true Biblical belief?
 - a. The persuasion that something is true.
- 88. What is the difference between head belief and heart belief within the Bible?
 - a. Head belief can be lost. Heart belief is kept for our life time and controls how we live.
- 89. What is true Biblical faith?
 - a. An action word based upon a belief from a promise in the word of God.
- 90. What is true Biblical grace?
 - a. Something given which we cannot earn.
- 91. Why does God give us grace?
 - a. To make God look good by our changed life.
- 92. What is true Biblical mercy?
 - a. Not getting the punishment that we deserve for our sins.
- 93. What is a Biblical covenant?
 - a. A spiritual contract.
- 94. What is true Biblical adultery?
 - a. A spiritual sin where we violate a covenant agreement.
- 95. What is true Biblical fornication?
 - a. A violation of a covenant relationship.
- 96. What does Ephesians 5 tell us that marriage pictures?
 - a. The relationship between Christ and the church.
- 97. What is the main requirement for prayer in relationship to our Bible?
 - a. We need to pray for God's guidance every time that we open the Bible.
- 98. Why does the Bible give us this relationship?
 - a. **1Corinthians 2:14** says: "But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned."
- 99. What three people are involved in conception?
 - a. A man, a woman and God must supply the spirit.
- 100. When we see a "th" or a "st" on the end of a Bible word, what does it mean?
 - a. These suffixes are only used on action verbs and tell us that these things are to be life-style actions.

Questions Only

1. Put your name on every page of the test and use the back of the test for more room to answer questions. Do **NOT** write too small because the teacher has old eyes that don't work as well as young eyes.
2. What is the purpose of Studying the Bible?
 - a. .
3. What is the difference between the purpose of an education from a secular college and Bible School?
 - a. .
4. Where does the Bible tell us: "Study to shew thyself approved unto God"?
 - a. .
5. What is the practical tool that you are to have for each subject that you study?
 - a. .
6. What is the characteristic from God which should be the main process for any type of study?
 - a. .
7. How do you go about studying a subject with a lot of information?
 - a. .
8. What are the main danger of books and web pages when it comes to studying a subject especially when studying something like the Bible?
 - a. .
9. What two purposes were given for taking notes in class?
 - a. .
 - b. .
10. What is the difference between "bible" and "the word of God"?
 - a. .
11. How do we know that God wrote the "word of God"?
 - a. .
 - b. .
 - c. .
12. Why is it important that we know that God wrote the "word of God"?
 - a. .
13. Why is it important that we know that God preserved the "word of God"?
 - a. .
14. What parts of the "word of God" are we told are preserved?
 - a. .
 - b. .
 - c. .
15. Sometimes we see the same message said in two different places of the Bible but different words are used. How does this fit the doctrine of preservation?
 - a. .
16. What is the main purpose of the "word of God" in our life today?
 - a. .
17. What language has God preserved His word in today?
 - a. .
18. What purpose do Bibles in other languages have?
 - a. .
19. Why do the Gospels tell the same incidents in different sequences?
 - a. .
20. What is the difference between interpretation and application?
 - a. .
21. Which of these is the definition of a Bible word?

- a. .
22. How do we find the true definition of a Bible word?
- a. .
b. .
c. .
23. Where in the Bible is God's main procedure for studying the Bible?
- a. .
24. What is a precept?
- a. .
25. Why do people argue about the doctrine that is found in Genesis?
- a. .
26. What does the phrase "He that hath ears to hear, let him hear" mean?
- a. .
27. What are the theories of 'Big Bang' and 'Evolution'?
- a. .
28. What are three simple evidences that 'Evolution' never happened and will never happen?
- a. .
b. .
c. .
29. What is available on computer devices, like smart phones, which are an example of the doctrine from **2Corinthians 4:18**?
- a. .
30. What are the three parts of man which were made in God's image and how did each die due to sin and how will Jesus Christ save each part?
- a. .
b. .
c. .
31. What is the evidence that someone is to display which shows that someone truly speaks for God?
- a. .
32. What is the evidence which people claim is evidence that they speak for God, but which claim is wrong?
- a. .
33. What are two main evidences that someone is preaching doctrinal error and that we should not listen to any of their doctrine so that we avoid being spiritually poisoned?
- a. .
b. .
34. What is the main attitude we are to have when we read the Bible or listen to anything which comes from the Bible?
- a. .
35. What are people truly saying when they are told a Bible truth and respond with 'I don't believe that'?
- a. .
36. **2Timothy 2:15** says: "Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth." "Dividing" is the mathematical function whereby we separate according to precise rules and get a precise result. What is the main Biblical rule for separating laws that all must obey from commandments that God gives to us personally to obey?
- a. .
37. What is the purpose of the word "Amen" in the Bible?
- a. .
38. Why did God put His word in writing?
- a. .
39. How do we find the true definition of Bible words?
- a. .
40. What is the difference in where we find a Bible word give to us?

- a. .
41. What is the main problem of using a man-written dictionary for Bible words?
a. .
42. What is the main requirement for prayer as related to the Bible?
a. .
43. What is the Biblical definition of the “Old Testament”?
a. .
44. What is the definition of a parable?
a. .
45. What is the main thing to remember when trying to understand a parable?
a. .
46. The Gospels have several places where they say that Jesus did many miracles, without specifying the exact miracle. Then, there are several places where the Gospels tell us about specific miracles and give us details. What is the main purpose of telling us about the specific miracles?
a. .
47. The Bible tells us that there are saved and lost in eternity but there are hot / cold / lukewarm (or godly / ungodly / unjust) people in this life. What is the relationship of these three types of people to salvation?
a. .
b. .
c. .
48. How are these three types of people related to the “Parable of the Sower” and the four types of ground / hearts?
a. .
b. .
c. .
49. How do we answer the claim that there are conflicts between the Gospels because incidents are presented at different times within the Gospels?
a. .
50. What is the main requirement for receiving most promises made by God for the ‘Church Age’?
a. .
51. What is the main purpose of prophecy in the Bible?
a. .
52. What is the basic doctrine of God’s title of Trinity, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
53. What is the basic doctrine of God’s title of Father, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
54. What is the basic doctrine of God’s title of Son, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
55. What is the basic doctrine of God’s title of Holy Spirit, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
56. What is the basic doctrine of God’s title of Lord, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
57. What is the basic doctrine of God’s title of Jesus, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
58. What is the basic doctrine of God’s title of Christ, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
59. What is the basic doctrine of God’s title of Lord Jesus, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
60. What is the basic doctrine of God’s title of Lord Christ, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
61. What is the basic doctrine of God’s title of Jesus Christ, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .

62. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Christ Jesus, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
63. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Lord Jesus Christ, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
64. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Son, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
65. What is the basic doctrine of God's title of Son of Man, and what is the main application for the saved?
a. .
66. How did Jesus deal with devils in the Gospels?
a. .
67. What is the Biblical difference between the word "devil" and the word 'daemon'?
a. .
68. How did Jesus deal with devils who identified Him and why?
a. .
69. What did Jesus say was the "greatest Commandment" and why is it not part of the "Ten Commandments"?
a. .
70. Which of the "Ten Commandments" is not applicable today and why?
a. .
71. What is the definition given of a covenant?
a. .
72. What are the two main covenants which saved people are to be involved in during the 'Church Age'?
a. .
b. .
73. Where does the Bible give us the doctrine of the "New Covenant" / "New Testament"?
a. .
74. Where does the Bible give us the doctrine of the "Old Covenant" / "Old Testament"?
a. .
75. What is the covenant of marriage and why does it have special importance to God?
a. .
76. What is the relationship between virginity and the marriage covenant?
a. .
77. What is the Biblical interpretation of the name of "Jesus"?
a. .
78. Where do we find the name of "Jesus" most often?
a.
79. What is the main doctrine that we learn from the name of "Jesus"?
a.
80. Where do we find the role of "Christ" most often?
a.
81. What is the main doctrine that is taught with the role of "Christ"?
a. .
82. What is the main doctrine of the role 'son'?
a. .
83. Why does God adopt us and give us the "power to become a son of God" (**John 1:12**)?
a. .
84. What is the main doctrine that is associated with the role of "Son of God"?
a. .
85. What is the main doctrine that is associated with the role of "Son of man"?
a. .
86. What is the example of the role of "Saviour"?
a. .

87. What is true Biblical belief?
 - a. .
88. What is the difference between head belief and heart belief within the Bible?
 - a. .
89. What is true Biblical faith?
 - a. .
90. What is true Biblical grace?
 - a. .
91. Why does God give us grace?
 - a. .
92. What is true Biblical mercy?
 - a. .
93. What is a Biblical covenant?
 - a. .
94. What is true Biblical adultery?
 - a. .
95. What is true Biblical fornication?
 - a. .
96. What does Ephesians 5 tell us that marriage pictures?
 - a. .
97. What is the main requirement for prayer in relationship to our Bible?
 - a. .
98. Why does the Bible give us this relationship?
 - a. .
99. What three people are involved in conception?
 - a. .
100. When we see a "th" or a "st" on the end of a Bible word, what does it mean?
 - a. .